

The background of the cover features a large, stylized, light gray graphic of a diver's mask and fins, set against a dark gray gradient. The mask is on the left, and the fins extend towards the bottom right.

part 2

# **TDI Diver Standards**

tdi diver  
standards

# Contents

<b>1. Course Overview Matrix .....</b>	<b>30</b>
▶ 1.1 All Courses.....	30
▶ 1.2 Rebreather Training Courses.....	34
<b>2. General Course Standards.....</b>	<b>37</b>
▶ 2.1 Administrative.....	37
▶ 2.2 Accidents.....	38
▶ 2.3 Definitions .....	38
▶ 2.4 Confined Water Training.....	38
▶ 2.5 Open Water Training .....	39
▶ 2.6 Conducting training in an overhead environment (cavern, cave, wreck, etc.).....	39
▶ 2.7 Conducting Courses Using Closed Circuit Rebreather (CCR).....	40
<b>3. Intro to Tech .....</b>	<b>41</b>
▶ 3.1 Introduction.....	41
▶ 3.2 Qualifications of Graduates.....	41
▶ 3.3 Who May Teach.....	41
▶ 3.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	42
▶ 3.5 Student Prerequisites .....	42
▶ 3.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	42
▶ 3.7 Administrative Requirements.....	43
▶ 3.8 Training Material .....	43
▶ 3.9 Required Equipment .....	43
▶ 3.10 Required Subject Areas .....	44
▶ 3.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	45

<b>4. Technical DPV Diver .....</b>	<b>47</b>
▶ 4.1 Introduction.....	47
▶ 4.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	47
▶ 4.3 Who May Teach.....	47
▶ 4.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	47
▶ 4.5 Student Prerequisites .....	48
▶ 4.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	48
▶ 4.7 Administrative Requirements.....	48
▶ 4.8 Required Equipment .....	49
▶ 4.9 Required Subject Areas.....	49
▶ 4.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	50
▶ 4.11 To qualify to teach the TDI Technical DPV Diver Course an Instructor must:.....	51
<b>5. Sidemount Diver .....</b>	<b>52</b>
▶ 5.1 Introduction .....	52
▶ 5.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	52
▶ 5.3 Who May Teach .....	52
▶ 5.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	52
▶ 5.5 Student Prerequisites .....	52
▶ 5.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	53
▶ 5.7 Administrative Requirements .....	53
▶ 5.8 Required Equipment .....	54
▶ 5.9 Required Subject Areas .....	54
▶ 5.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	55
▶ 5.11 To qualify to teach the TDI Sidemount Diver Course an Instructor must:.....	56

## **6. Nitrox Diver ..... 57**

▶ 6.1 Introduction.....	57
▶ 6.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	57
▶ 6.3 Who May Teach.....	57
▶ 6.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	57
▶ 6.5 Student Prerequisites .....	58
▶ 6.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	58
▶ 6.7 Administrative Requirements.....	58
▶ 6.8 Training Material .....	58
▶ 6.9 Required Equipment .....	59
▶ 6.10 Required Subject Areas.....	59
▶ 6.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	60

## **7. Advanced Nitrox Diver ..... 61**

▶ 7.1 Introduction .....	61
▶ 7.2 Qualifications of Graduates.....	61
▶ 7.3 Who May Teach .....	61
▶ 7.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	61
▶ 7.5 Student Prerequisites .....	62
▶ 7.6 Course Structure and Duration.....	62
▶ 7.7 Administrative Requirements .....	63
▶ 7.8 Training Material.....	63
▶ 7.9 Required Equipment.....	63
▶ 7.10 Required Subject Areas .....	64
▶ 7.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	65

## **8. Decompression Procedures Diver ..... 67**

▶ 8.1 Introduction.....	67
▶ 8.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	67
▶ 8.3 Who May Teach.....	67
▶ 8.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	68
▶ 8.5 Student Prerequisites .....	68
▶ 8.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	68
▶ 8.7 Administrative Requirements.....	69
▶ 8.8 Training Material .....	69
▶ 8.9 Required Equipment .....	69
▶ 8.10 Required Subject Areas.....	70
▶ 8.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	72

## **9. Extended Range Diver ..... 75**

▶ 9.1 Introduction.....	75
▶ 9.2 Qualifications of Graduates.....	75
▶ 9.3 Who May Teach.....	75
▶ 9.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	75
▶ 9.5 Student Prerequisites .....	76
▶ 9.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	76
▶ 9.7 Administrative Requirements.....	76
▶ 9.8 Training Material.....	77
▶ 9.9 Required Equipment.....	77
▶ 9.10 Required Subject Areas .....	78
▶ 9.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	80

<b>10. Helitrox Diver .....</b>	<b>82</b>
▶ 10.1 Introduction.....	82
▶ 10.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	82
▶ 10.3 Who May Teach.....	82
▶ 10.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	83
▶ 10.5 Student Prerequisites .....	83
▶ 10.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	83
▶ 10.7 Administrative Requirements.....	84
▶ 10.8 Training Material .....	84
▶ 10.9 Required Equipment .....	84
▶ 10.10 Required Subject Areas.....	85
▶ 10.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	87
 <b>11. Advanced Wreck Diver .....</b>	 <b>90</b>
▶ 11.1 Introduction .....	90
▶ 11.2 Qualifications of Graduates.....	90
▶ 11.3 Who May Teach .....	90
▶ 11.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	90
▶ 11.5 Student Prerequisites .....	90
▶ 11.6 Course Structure and Duration.....	91
▶ 11.7 Administrative Requirements .....	91
▶ 11.8 Training Material.....	91
▶ 11.9 Required Equipment.....	92
▶ 11.10 Required Subject Areas .....	93
▶ 11.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	94

<b>12. Trimix Diver .....</b>	<b>96</b>
▶ 12.1 Introduction.....	96
▶ 12.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	96
▶ 12.3 Who May Teach.....	96
▶ 12.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	96
▶ 12.5 Student Prerequisites .....	97
▶ 12.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	97
▶ 12.7 Administrative Requirements.....	97
▶ 12.8 Training Material .....	98
▶ 12.9 Required Equipment .....	98
▶ 12.10 Required Subject Areas.....	99
▶ 12.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	101
<b>13. Advanced Trimix Diver .....</b>	<b>103</b>
▶ 13.1 Introduction.....	103
▶ 13.2 Qualifications of Graduates.....	103
▶ 13.3 Who May Teach.....	103
▶ 13.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	103
▶ 13.5 Student Prerequisites .....	104
▶ 13.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	104
▶ 13.7 Administrative Requirements.....	104
▶ 13.8 Training Material .....	105
▶ 13.9 Required Equipment .....	105
▶ 13.10 Required Subject Areas.....	106
▶ 13.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	108

## **14. Nitrox Gas Blender .....110**

- ▶ 14.1 Introduction..... 110
- ▶ 14.2 Qualifications of Graduates ..... 110
- ▶ 14.3 Who May Teach..... 110
- ▶ 14.4 Student to Instructor Ratio..... 110
- ▶ 14.5 Student Prerequisites ..... 110
- ▶ 14.6 Course Structure and Duration ..... 110
- ▶ 14.7 Administrative Requirements..... 111
- ▶ 14.8 Required Equipment ..... 111
- ▶ 14.9 Required Subject Areas..... 111
- ▶ 14.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation  
Requirements ..... 112

## **15. Advanced Gas Blender .....113**

- ▶ 15.1 Introduction..... 113
- ▶ 15.2 Qualifications of Graduates..... 113
- ▶ 15.3 Who May Teach..... 113
- ▶ 15.4 Student to Instructor Ratio..... 113
- ▶ 15.5 Student Prerequisites ..... 113
- ▶ 15.6 Course Structure and Duration ..... 114
- ▶ 15.7 Administrative Requirements..... 114
- ▶ 15.8 Training Material ..... 114
- ▶ 15.9 Required Equipment ..... 114
- ▶ 15.10 Required Subject Areas..... 115
- ▶ 15.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation  
Requirements ..... 116



## 16. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) Equipment Service

### Technician ..... 117

16.1 Introduction.....	117
16.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	117
16.3 Who May Teach .....	117
16.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	117
16.5 Student Prerequisites.....	118
16.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	118
16.7 Administrative Requirements.....	118
16.8 Training Material .....	119
16.9 Required Equipment .....	119
16.10 Required Subject Areas.....	119
16.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	120

### 17. Cavern Discovery ..... 121

17.1 Introduction .....	121
17.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	121
17.3 Who May Teach .....	121
17.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	121
17.5 Student Prerequisites .....	122
17.6 Course Structure and Duration.....	122
17.7 Administrative Requirements .....	123
17.8 Required Equipment.....	123
17.9 Required Subject Areas .....	124
17.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	125

## **18. Cavern Diver ..... 126**

- ▶ 18.1 Introduction..... 126
- ▶ 18.2 Qualifications of Graduates ..... 126
- ▶ 18.3 Who May Teach ..... 126
- ▶ 18.4 Student to Instructor Ratio..... 127
- ▶ 18.5 Student Prerequisites ..... 127
- ▶ 18.6 Course Structure and Duration ..... 127
- ▶ 18.7 Administrative Requirements..... 128
- ▶ 18.8 Required Equipment ..... 128
- ▶ 18.9 Required Subject Areas..... 129
- ▶ 18.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements ..... 130

## **19. Intro to Cave Diver ..... 131**

- ▶ 19.1 Introduction..... 131
- ▶ 19.2 Qualifications of Graduates..... 131
- ▶ 19.3 Who May Teach..... 131
- ▶ 19.4 Student to Instructor Ratio ..... 132
- ▶ 19.5 Student Prerequisites ..... 132
- ▶ 19.6 Course Structure and Duration ..... 132
- ▶ 19.7 Administrative Requirements..... 133
- ▶ 19.8 Required Equipment ..... 133
- ▶ 19.9 Required Subject Areas..... 134
- ▶ 19.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements ..... 135

<b>20. Full Cave Diver .....</b>	<b>137</b>
▶ 20.1 Introduction .....	137
▶ 20.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	137
▶ 20.3 Who May Teach .....	137
▶ 20.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	137
▶ 20.5 Student Prerequisites.....	138
▶ 20.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	138
▶ 20.7 Administrative Requirements .....	138
▶ 20.8 Required Equipment .....	139
▶ 20.9 Required Subject Areas .....	140
▶ 20.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	141
<b>21. Underwater Cave Surveying Diver .....</b>	<b>142</b>
▶ 21.1 Introduction.....	142
▶ 21.2 Who May Teach.....	142
▶ 21.3 Qualifications of Graduates / Limits of Training.....	142
▶ 21.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	142
▶ 21.5 Student Prerequisites .....	143
▶ 21.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	143
▶ 21.7 Required Materials .....	143
▶ 21.8 Required Equipment .....	144
▶ 21.9 Required Subject Areas.....	145
▶ 21.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	146
▶ 21.11 Instructor Requirements .....	146

<b>22. DPV Cave Diver.....</b>	<b>147</b>
▶ 22.1 Introduction .....	147
▶ 22.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	147
▶ 22.3 Who May Teach .....	147
▶ 22.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	147
▶ 22.5 Student Prerequisites.....	148
▶ 22.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	148
▶ 22.7 Administrative Requirements .....	148
▶ 22.8 Required Equipment .....	149
▶ 22.9 Required Subject Areas .....	150
▶ 22.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	151
<b>23. Stage Cave Diver .....</b>	<b>152</b>
▶ 23.1 Introduction .....	152
▶ 23.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	152
▶ 23.3 Who May Teach .....	152
▶ 23.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	152
▶ 23.5 Student Prerequisites.....	153
▶ 23.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	153
▶ 23.7 Administrative Requirements .....	153
▶ 23.8 Required Equipment .....	154
▶ 23.9 Required Subject Areas .....	154
▶ 23.10 Required Skill Performance And Graduation Requirements .....	155
▶ 23.11 Instructor Requirements.....	155

<b>24. Mine Diver Level I .....</b>	<b>156</b>
▶ 24.1 Introduction.....	156
▶ 24.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	156
▶ 24.3 Who May Teach .....	156
▶ 24.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	157
▶ 24.5 Student Prerequisites.....	157
▶ 24.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	157
▶ 24.7 Administrative Requirements .....	158
▶ 24.8 Training Material .....	158
▶ 24.9 Required Equipment .....	159
▶ 24.10 Required Subject Areas.....	159
▶ 24.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	160
▶ 24.12 Permission to Dive.....	162
 <b>25. Mine Diver Level II .....</b>	 <b>163</b>
▶ 25.1 Introduction.....	163
▶ 25.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	163
▶ 25.3 Who May Teach .....	163
▶ 25.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	164
▶ 25.5 Student Prerequisites.....	164
▶ 25.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	164
▶ 25.7 Administrative Requirements .....	165
▶ 25.8 Training Material .....	165
▶ 25.9 Required Equipment .....	165
▶ 25.10 Required Subject Areas.....	166
▶ 25.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	167
▶ 25.12 Permission to Dive.....	169

## **26. Rebreather Discovery Program ..... 170**

▶ 26.1 Introduction.....	170
▶ 26.2 Qualifications of graduates.....	170
▶ 26.3 Who may teach.....	170
▶ 26.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	170
▶ 26.5 Student Prerequisites.....	170
▶ 26.6 Program Structure and Duration .....	171
▶ 26.7 Administrative requirements .....	172
▶ 26.8 Required equipment .....	172
▶ 26.9 Required subject areas .....	173
▶ 26.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	174

## **27. Semi-Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver, Unit Specific- DOLPHIN, RAY, Atlantis, SUBMATIX ST100 & AZIMUTH ..... 176**

▶ 27.1 Introduction .....	176
▶ 27.2 Qualifications of Graduates.....	176
▶ 27.3 Who May Teach.....	176
▶ 27.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	176
▶ 27.5 Student Prerequisites .....	177
▶ 27.6 Course Structure and Duration.....	177
▶ 27.7 Administrative Requirements .....	177
▶ 27.8 Training Material.....	178
▶ 27.9 Required Equipment.....	178
▶ 27.10 Required Subject Areas .....	178
▶ 27.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	180

<b>28. KISS GEM Level 1 Diver .....</b>	<b>181</b>
▶ 28.1 Introduction .....	181
▶ 28.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	181
▶ 28.3 Who May Teach .....	181
▶ 28.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	181
▶ 28.5 Student Prerequisites.....	181
▶ 28.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	182
▶ 28.7 Administrative Requirements .....	182
▶ 28.8 Training Material .....	183
▶ 28.9 Required Equipment .....	183
▶ 28.10 Required Subject Areas .....	184
▶ 28.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	185
<b>29. KISS GEM Sidekick Diver .....</b>	<b>187</b>
▶ 29.1 Introduction.....	187
▶ 29.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	187
▶ 29.3 Who May Teach .....	187
▶ 29.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	187
▶ 29.5 Student Prerequisites.....	187
▶ 29.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	188
▶ 29.7 Administrative Requirements.....	189
▶ 29.8 Training Material .....	189
▶ 29.9 Required Equipment .....	189
▶ 29.10 Required Subject Areas.....	190
▶ 29.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	191

## 30. Air Diluent Closed Circuit Rebreather

### Diver, Unit Specific ..... 194

30.1 Introduction .....	194
30.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	194
30.3 Who May Teach .....	194
30.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	194
30.5 Student Prerequisites.....	195
30.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	195
30.7 Administrative Requirements .....	196
30.8 Training Materials .....	196
30.9 Required Equipment .....	197
30.10 Required Subject Areas.....	197
30.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	199

## 31. Air Diluent Closed Circuit Rebreather

### Decompression Procedures Diver, Unit

### Specific- ..... 202

31.1 Introduction .....	202
31.2 Qualifications of Graduates.....	202
31.3 Who May Teach.....	202
31.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	202
31.5 Student Prerequisites .....	203
31.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	203
31.7 Administrative Requirements.....	205
31.8 Training Materials.....	205
31.9 Required Equipment.....	206
31.10 Required Subject Areas .....	206
31.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	208



## **32. Helitrox Diluent Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver Decompression Procedures Course, Unit Specific.....211**

▶ 32.1 Introduction .....	211
▶ 32.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	211
▶ 32.3 Who May Teach .....	211
▶ 32.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	211
▶ 32.5 Student Prerequisites.....	212
▶ 32.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	212
▶ 32.7 Administrative Requirements .....	214
▶ 32.8 Training Materials .....	214
▶ 32.9 Required Equipment .....	215
▶ 32.10 Required Subject Areas.....	215
▶ 32.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	217

## **33. Mixed Gas Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver, Unit Specific ..... 221**

▶ 33.1 Introduction.....	221
▶ 33.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	221
▶ 33.3 Who May Teach .....	221
▶ 33.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	222
▶ 33.5 Student Prerequisites.....	222
▶ 33.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	222
▶ 33.7 Administrative Requirements.....	223
▶ 33.8 Required Equipment .....	224
▶ 33.9 Required Subject Areas.....	225
▶ 33.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	226

## **34. Advanced Mixed Gas Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver, Unit Specific..... 229**

▶ 34.1 Introduction .....	229
▶ 34.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	229
▶ 34.3 Who May Teach .....	229
▶ 34.4 Student to Instructor Ratio .....	229
▶ 34.5 Student Prerequisites.....	230
▶ 34.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	230
▶ 34.7 Administrative Requirements .....	231
▶ 34.8 Required Equipment .....	231
▶ 34.9 Required Subject Areas .....	232
▶ 34.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	233

## **35. Rebreather Cavern Diver ..... 237**

▶ 35.1 Introduction.....	237
▶ 35.2 Qualifications of Graduates .....	237
▶ 35.3 Who May Teach .....	238
▶ 35.4 Student to Instructor Ratio.....	238
▶ 35.5 Student Prerequisites.....	238
▶ 35.6 Course Structure and Duration .....	238
▶ 35.7 Administrative Requirements.....	239
▶ 35.8 Required Equipment .....	239
▶ 35.9 Required Subject Areas.....	240
▶ 35.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements .....	242

## **36. Rebreather Intro to Cave ..... 244**

- ▶ 36.1 Introduction ..... 244
- ▶ 36.2 Qualifications of Graduates ..... 244
- ▶ 36.3 Who May Teach ..... 244
- ▶ 36.4 Student to Instructor Ratio ..... 245
- ▶ 36.5 Student Prerequisites..... 245
- ▶ 36.6 Course Structure and Duration ..... 245
- ▶ 36.7 Administrative Requirements ..... 246
- ▶ 36.8 Required Equipment ..... 246
- ▶ 36.9 Required Subject Areas ..... 247
- ▶ 36.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements ..... 249

## **37. Rebreather Full Cave Diver ..... 251**

- ▶ 37.1 Introduction ..... 251
- ▶ 37.2 Qualifications of Graduates..... 251
- ▶ 37.3 Who May Teach..... 251
- ▶ 37.4 Student to Instructor Ratio ..... 252
- ▶ 37.5 Student Prerequisites ..... 252
- ▶ 37.6 Course Structure and Duration..... 252
- ▶ 37.7 Administrative Requirements ..... 253
- ▶ 37.8 Required Equipment..... 253
- ▶ 37.9 Required Subject Areas ..... 255
- ▶ 37.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements ..... 256



<b>Revision History</b>		
<b>Revision Number</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Changes</b>
2.0	11/12/2001	Reformatted
2.1	02/04/2002	1st Quarter 2002 Updates
2.2	10/10/2002	Updated with latest Training Updates.
3.0	08/15/2003	Updated with latest Training Updates.
3.1	12/19/2003	Editorial changes and minor updates.
5.0	11/19/2004	Minor updates.
6.0	10/13/2005	Major updates and additional standards added
7.0	10/27/2005	Editorial changes and training updates
8.0	11/13/2007	Updated with 2007 training updates. New standards.
9.0	12/01/2008	Updated with new standards and minor editorial changes
10.0	12/31/2009	Updated with 2009 training updates. Minor Edits.
11.0	01/01/2011	Major edits, minor updates
11.1	07/01/2011	Added Sidemount Standard and rEvo to the CCR Standards
12.0	01/01/2012	Added: DPV Diver #4 Helitrox Diver #10 Underwater Cave Surveying Diver Standard #20 DPV Cave Diver Standard #21 Stage Cave Diver Standard #22 KISS GEM Level 1 SCR Rebreather Standard #24 Minor edits
12.1	01/23/2012	Minor edits
12.2	02/15/2012	Added Instructor requirements to: DPV Diver Sidemount Diver Helitrox Diver
12.3	06/01/2012	2.3 Added Definitions
12.4	08/15/2012	Modified Poseidon MK VI / SE7EN Air Diluent CCR Diver #29 Added Poseidon Air Diluent Decompression Procedures Diver #30 and Poseidon Mixed Gas CCR Diver #31 Added Mine Diver I #23 and Mine Diver II #24

Revision History		
Revision Number	Date	Changes
13.0	01/01/2013	# 32 MK VI / SE7EN Deco Procedures Diver Standard Changed the maximum depth for the MK VI / SE7EN to 40 metres / 130 feet to match Poseidon deco battery Added: Planning for bailout/deco OC gas requirements to the Dive Planning section Added: Use of the DSV/ADV for diluent flushes on the MK VI / Se7en to the Emergency Procedures section #33 MK VI / SE7EN Mixed Gas Diver Standard Revised the Prerequisites
13.1	04/01/2013	#2 Added Advanced Wreck to the list of courses that can be conducted using a CCR #34 Added Hollis Explorer Air Diluent CCR
13.2	07/01/2013	#25 Added Rebreather Discovery Program #27 Added Kiss GEM Sidekick Diver #30.6 Page 141 Clarified Crossover requirements #37 Added Rebreather Cavern Diver Standard #38 Added Rebreather Intro to Cave Standard #39 Added Rebreather Full Cave Diver Standard
13.3	07/15/2013	Page 2 Removed requirement for student and instructor to be on the same unit when conducting courses using CCRs #5.11 Clarified requirements to become a TDI Sidemount Instructor Items 3.8, 5.9, 7.8, 8.8, 9.9, 10.8, 11.8, 12.8 and 13.8 Added Cue Cards and Evaluation Slate as optional material 17.8 Added TDI Diving In Overhead Environments manual as suggested reading material Items 29.8, 30.8, 31.8, 32.8, 33.8, 34.8, 35.8, 36.8 and 39.8 Added TDI CCR Preflight check list and manufacturer's build checklist to required materials #32 Added Discovery MK VI / SE7EN to the Mixed Gas CCR Diver Standards. Important Note: MK VI / SE7EN MUST be equipped with the full 60M Trimix upgrade. #19.2 Page 83 Clarified requirements if decompression stops are conducted during course #19.5 Page 84 Clarified prerequisite ratings need if decompression stops are conducted during the course #31 Helitrox CCR Diver Unit Specific Standard #35.5 Page 171 Clarified the prerequisites for MK VI / SE7EN CCR Mixed Gas Diver
14.0	01/01/2014	No Changes
14.1	04/01/2014	Replace MK VI with MK VI / Se7en throughout Diver Standards 1.2 Rebreather Matrix updated 2.6 Clarified use of CCR's during TDI Diver courses

<b>Revision History</b>		
<b>Revision Number</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Changes</b>
14.2	10/01/2014	<p>Course Matrix-Updated depth of dives for Intro to Tech 29.5, 30.5 31.5 Added to prerequisites: If the rebreather is a TDI approved sidemount rebreather, the student must hold the TDI Sidemount Diver certification or equivalent and provide proof of 10 logged sidemount dives</p> <p>29.10, 30.11,31.11 Added to the Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements: All standards set by both TDI and the rebreather manufacturer must be met, while maximum limits of neither may be exceeded</p> <p>32 CCR Mixed Gas Diver completely revised</p> <p>33 CCR Advanced Mix Gas Diver completely revised</p> <p>29.8 Required Materials for Air Diluent CCR revised</p> <p>30.8 Required Materials for Air Diluent Decompression CCR revised</p> <p>31.8 Required Materials for Helitrox Decompression CCR revised</p>
15.0	01/01/2015	No Changes
15.1	04/01/2015	<p>Course Matrix</p> <p>#30 added:</p> <p>TDI Air Diluent CCR Diver certified or equivalent</p> <p>30 hours on the CCR unit Six months CCR diving experience</p> <p>#39 Added Cave to introductory diver to clarify</p> <p>5.11 Added instructor must be a certified sidemount diver</p> <p>32.6 Course Structure and Duration Open Water execution added new items 6 and 7</p> <p>33 added Poseidon SE7EN must be equipped with full 100M upgrades, including 100M-emodule and counter-lungs with manual addition valves.</p>
15.2	08/01/2015	<p>1.2 Rebreather Matrix: Clarified Advanced Mixed Gas rating for MKVI/ SE7EN unit</p> <p>Added the following rebreather units to list: JJ, Liberty and Triton</p>
15.3	11/01/2015	<p>Page Two: Headquarters information updated</p> <p>2.6 Added new point clarifying training in overread environments</p> <p>2.7 Clarified Instructor requirements for teaching courses using CCR's</p> <p>40.3 Added required diver rating for instructor clarification</p>
16.0	01/01/2016	No Changes
16.1	04/01/2016	5.9 Added new Sidemount materials as a requirement
17.0	01/01/2017	1.2 Added Defender CCR ratings to list

<b>Revision History</b>		
<b>Revision Number</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Changes</b>
17.1	02/24/2017	29.6 Course Structure and Duration added new item 3 to crossover section 30.6 Course Structure and Duration #1 changed Deco Diver to Air Dil Diver #1, #b changed 3 dives to 4 added new item 2 to crossover section 31.6 Course Structure and Duration added new item 2 to crossover section
18.0	01/01/2018	1.1 Updated Course Matrix for Intro to Tech to list Open Water Diver as prerequisite 2.3 Added definition of prerequisites 5.6.2 Added requirements when adding Advanced Nitrox with Sidemount training 6.2 Qualification of Graduates, language added for clarification 6.11 Required Skill Performance, skill added 7.6 Added Sidemount after Intro to Tech 8.2.7 changed to TDI Trimix 8.6.2 Added the combination of Intro to Tech or Sidemount with Advanced Nitrox and Decompression Procedures 14.10 Clarification language added for ISO/EUF certification 15.9 #1 Changed to read Oxygen analyzer (instructor may provide, #2 Helium analyzer (instructor may provide) 15.11 Clarification language added for ISO/EUF certification 17 Added new Standard Cavern Discovery 19.3 Updated "Who can teach" 19.5.2 Prerequisite updated 19.6 Under Duration #3 added Cavern when combining programs 19.8 Updated required equipment 20.3 Updated "Who can teach" 20.6 Under Duration #3 added Full Cave when combining programs 20.8 Updated required equipment 30.5 Updated Prerequisites for number of sidemount dives and manufacturer requirements 30.8 Added Manufacturer's minimum training standard 30.11 Added new item #3 Satisfactorily complete any skill required by manufacturer 31.5 Updated Prerequisites for number of sidemount dives and manufacturer requirements 31.6.1 Change entry level 1 to Air Diluent 31.8 Added Manufacturer's minimum training standard 31.11 Added new item #3 Satisfactorily complete any skill required by manufacturer 32.5 Updated Prerequisites for number of sidemount dives and manufacturer requirements



Revision History		
Revision Number	Date	Changes
18.0	01/01/2018	32.6 Change entry level 1 to Air Diluent 32.8 Added Manufacturer's minimum training standard 32.11. 3 Added new Satisfactorily complete any skill required by manufacturer 32.11.8 Listed updated calculation for bailout gas 32.11.9 Added Planning software for use 33.6 Deleted old #6 33.6 Added a Crossover section 33.8.3 Amount of bailout gas redefined 33.10.4 Listed updated calculation for bailout gas 34.6 Deleted old #6 34.6 Added a Crossover section 34.8.3 Amount of bailout gas redefined 34.10.4 Listed updated calculation for bailout gas 37 Changed name for Mixed Gas CCR Poseidon MKVI to Helitrox Deco Procedures CCR
19.0	01/01/2019	Added eLearning option to all applicable courses Changed lift bag size requirement in all applicable courses 1. Corrected errors in overview matrix to match course standards, removed Poseidon-specific standards 2.1.2 Clarified medical form requirement 2.1.5 Added requirement to download and retain student dive logs for all CCR courses 2.1.5 Removed - redundant to language in Part 1 2.2 Added reference 2.6.1 Added requirement of 10 logged post-training dives 2.6.3 Removed requirement for student experience 4. Name changed to Technical DPV Diver throughout standard 5.6.1 Added "open water" 6.2 and 6.10.8 Added language to comply with EUF requirements 10.1 and 10.2.4 Added +/-5% to allowable He percentage 11.5 Clarified prerequisites 11.9 Clarified required equipment 11.11 Clarified in-water drills 12.6 Clarified open water execution 12.11 Clarified In-water Drills 14.7.4.a, 15.7.4.a. and 16.7.4.a. clarified proper form 14.7.4.b, 15.7.4.b and 16.7.4.b. removed medical form 18.5 Added prerequisite for dives deeper than 60 ft 18.8 Updated materials list 19.2 Added new item 4. No restrictions 27.10.5.g Corrected to Carbon dioxide 30.4 Adjusted CW and OW ratios 30.5 Clarified prerequisites, added Advanced Nitrox diver to courses that can be combined

Revision History		
Revision Number	Date	Changes
19.0	01/01/2019	<p>30.6 Adjusted crossover requirements</p> <p>30.7 Added requirement to download log of student dives</p> <p>30.8 Clarified training materials</p> <p>30.9 Clarified required equipment</p> <p>30.10 Added new topics required by RESA and clarified others</p> <p>30.11 Added requirement for all skills to be demonstrated by instructor on the unit-specific CCR, added additional skills required by RESA</p> <p>31.1 Changed max depth to 40m/130 ft</p> <p>31.4 Adjusted CW and OW ratios</p> <p>31.5 Clarified prerequisites</p> <p>31.6 Changed max depth, clarified crossover and upgrade requirements</p> <p>31.7 Added requirement to download log of student dives</p> <p>31.8 Clarified required training materials</p> <p>31.9 Clarified required equipment</p> <p>31.10 Added new topics required by RESA and clarified others</p> <p>31.11 Added requirement for all skills to be demonstrated by instructor on the unit-specific CCR, added additional skills required by RESA</p> <p>32.1 Added +/-5% to helium content</p> <p>32.3 Clarified prerequisites for instructor course</p> <p>32.4 Adjusted CW and OW ratios</p> <p>32.5 Clarified prerequisites</p> <p>32.6 Clarified crossover and upgrade requirements</p> <p>32.7 Added requirement to download log of student dives</p> <p>32.8 Clarified required training materials</p> <p>32.9 Clarified required equipment</p> <p>32.10 Added new topics required by RESA and clarified others</p> <p>32.11 Added requirement for all skills to be demonstrated by instructor on the unit-specific CCR, added additional skills required by RESA</p> <p>33.4 Clarified ratios</p> <p>33.5 Clarified prerequisites</p> <p>33.6 Clarified requirements</p> <p>33.7 Added requirement to download log of student dives</p> <p>33.8 Added required equipment</p> <p>33.9 Added new topics required by RESA and clarified others</p> <p>33.10 Added requirement for all skills to be demonstrated by instructor on the unit-specific CCR, added additional skills required by RESA and clarified exam required</p> <p>34.4 Clarified ratios</p> <p>34.5 Clarified prerequisites</p> <p>34.6 Clarified requirements</p> <p>34.7 Added requirement to download log of student dives</p> <p>34.8 Clarified required equipment</p>

Revision History		
Revision Number	Date	Changes
19.0	01/01/2019	<p>34.9 Added new topics required by RESA and clarified others</p> <p>34.10 Added requirement for all skills to be demonstrated by instructor on the unit-specific CCR, added additional skills required by RESA and clarified required materials and exam</p> <p>35, 36, 37 Deleted Poseidon specific CCR standards; not compliant with RESA standards</p> <p>39, 40 and 41 Changed "bottle swapping" to "gas sharing"</p> <p>39.3 and 40.3 Clarified who may teach</p> <p>39.8.1-39.8.3 Changed "Diving in Overhead Environments" to "Cavern Diver"</p> <p>41.6 Duration – added combined course requirements</p> <p>Formatting updated</p>
0120	01/01/2020	<p>General grammar edits implemented</p> <p>Course Overview Matrix, # 5, Changed number of required dives to "3"</p> <p>2.1.2.a. Defined the valid term for a physician signed medical</p> <p>3.8 Powerpoint &amp; Instructor Resource moved from required to optional</p> <p>4.10 Removed reference to cave &amp; cavern diving</p> <p>8.9.4 Item clarified</p> <p>8.9.5 Item deleted subsequent items renumbered</p> <p>10.1 &amp; 10.2 Helium percentage changed from "20" to "35"</p> <p>26.10 Under "In order to complete", item 1 removed, subsequent items renumbered</p> <p>31.6 "Crossover" list Item 1 Corrected course name</p> <p>31.11.9 &amp; 31.11.12 further clarified</p> <p>31.11 Under "Open Water Skills", item 2, removed text "where appropriate". Under "Decompression related in water skills", Item 8, "simulated or actual" added after "include"</p> <p>32.1 Helium percentage changed from "20" to "35"</p> <p>32.3 Removed all text except for first sentence</p> <p>32.11. Item 12, "or actual" added after "simulated". Under "Open Water Skills", Item 2, removed "where appropriate"</p>
0121	01/01/2021	<p>1. 33, "Decompression" added after "Air Diluent" under prerequisite column</p> <p>3.8, 5.9, Knowledge quest added under "Required Material"</p> <p>5.11 Changes made to remove the administrative upgrade path for this level</p> <p>6.10 Clarified Item</p> <p>6.11.4, 7.11.5, 8.9.2.b., 9.9.1.c, 9.9.2.b, 9.9.3.b, 10.9.4., 11.9.1.c, 11.9.2, 12.9.1.c, 12.9.2.b, 13.9.1.c, 13.9.2.b, and 13.9.3b, Added or replaced "TDI Standards" with "in accordance with local practices and/or regulations"</p> <p>8.1 Replaced "Extended Range" with "Full Cave" and removed part of 3rd sentence</p> <p>20.5.3, 24.3, 24.5.2, 24.5.3, 25.3, New content added</p> <p>20.8.3 Corrected numbering</p> <p>38.6 Section edited</p>

Revision History		
Revision Number	Date	Changes
0221	02/01/2021	No Changes
0122	01/01/2022	2.5 Item 10 added 2.7 Technical DPV added to list of courses 19.8.3, 20.8.2, 21.8.2, 22.8.2, 23.8.2, 24.9.3, 25.9.2 Under Equipment required for each student - removed specified long hose length 19.10.5, 20.10.5 Under In-Water Skills Item expanded upon 22.11 Section removed 30.6, 31.6, 32.6, 33.6, 34.6 Crossover bold text clarified 35 Explorer Rebreather Diver Standard removed, all subsequent sections renumbered 38.8.2 (37.8.2) Under Equipment required for each student - Item expanded upon

# 1. Course Overview Matrix

## 1.1 All Courses

	Course Name	Minimum Age	Number of Required Dives	Student to Instructor Ratio	Prerequisite Certification and Dives
3	Intro to Tech	15	3 dives no deeper than 23 metres / 75 feet	6 to 1	Open Water Diver 25 logged dives
4	Technical DPV Diver	18	2 dives	3 to 1	Open Water Diver 25 logged dives
5	Sidemount Diver	18	3 dives	4 to 1	Open Water Diver 25 logged dives
6	Nitrox Diver	15	None, 2 dives recommended	N/A 8 to 1 if enrolled in an Open Water course	SDI Open Water Scuba Diver or current enrollment in an SDI Open water Scuba Diver course or equivalent
7	Advanced Nitrox	15	4 dives 100 minutes bottom time	8 to 1	Nitrox diver 25 logged dives
8	Decompression Procedures Diver	18	4 dives	4 to 1	Advanced Adventure Diver or Advanced Diver and 25 logged dives
9	Extended Range Diver	18	4 dives All dives greater than 33 metres / 100 feet 2 dives greater than 40 metres / 130 feet	4 to 1	Advanced Nitrox and Decompression Procedures certifications 100 logged dives
10	Helitrox Diver	18	4 dives 2 dives greater than 30 metres / 100 feet	4 to 1	Advanced Diver with Deep Specialty or TDI Intro to Tech Diver, Advanced Nitrox Diver 50 logged dives
11	Advanced Wreck Diver	18	6 dives all penetration 100 minutes bottom time	4 to 1	Advanced diver Wreck Diver or Cavern 50 logged dives

## TDI Standards and Procedures

### Part 2: TDI Diver Standards

12	Trimix Diver	18	4 decompression dives 2 greater than 40 metres / 130 feet 100 minutes bottom time	4 to 1	Decompression procedures and advanced nitrox certifications 100 logged dives
13	Advanced Trimix Diver	18	4 dives 2 greater than 70 m /230 ft 100 minutes bottom time	4 to 1	Extended Range Diver or Trimix Diver 100 logged dives
14	Nitrox Gas Blender	18	N/A	N/A	None
15	Advanced Gas Blender	18	N/A	N/A	TDI Nitrox Gas Blender or equivalent
16	Oxygen (O <sub>2</sub> ) Equipment Service Technician	18	N/A	N/A	TDI Nitrox Gas Blender VIP Inspector General equipment technician Employed at a scuba related facility
17	Cavern Discovery	15	1 Cavern Dive	2 to 1	SDI Open Water Scuba Diver or Equivalent 25 logged dives
18	Cavern Diver	15	4 dives and 80 minutes bottom time at 2 different sites	4 to 1	Open water diver 25 logged dives
19	Intro to Cave Diver	15	4 dives with limited penetration 80 minutes bottom time at 2 different locations	3 to 1	Cavern diver
20	Full Cave Diver	18	8 dives 240 minutes bottom time	3 to 1	Introductory cave diver
21	Underwater Cave Surveying Diver	18	2 dives for a minimum of 60 minutes	2 to 1	Full Cave Diver, 25 non-training full cave dives
22	DPV Cave Diver	18	3 dives for a minimum of 90 minutes	2 to 1	Full Cave diver, 25 non-training full cave dives
23	Stage Cave Diver	18	3 dives at 2 different locations for a minimum of 90 minutes	3 to 1	Full Cave diver
24	Mine Diver I	18	4 dives for minimum 100 minutes If combined with Mine Diver I-12 dives for a minimum of 340 minutes over 6 days	3 to 1	TDI Cavern Diver or equivalent
25	Mine Diver II	18	8 dives for minimum 240 minutes If combined with Mine Diver I-12 dives for a minimum of 340 minutes over 6 days	3 to 1	TDI Mine Diver 1

## TDI Standards and Procedures

### Part 2: TDI Diver Standards

26	Rebreather Discovery	18	1 pool/confined water session for minimum 30 minutes to a maximum depth of 9 metres / 30 feet 1 Open water session is optional	1 to 1	TDI Nitrox Diver or equivalent 10 logged dives to participate in pool/confined session 25 logged dives to participate in open water session
27	Semi-Closed Rebreather Diver	15	4 dives 100 minutes bottom time for Dolphin 6 dives for the Azimuth	6 to 1	Nitrox Diver or current enrollment in a Nitrox Diver course
28	KISS GEM Level 1 Rebreather Diver	18	Minimum of 60 minutes in confined water Minimum 5 dives Minimum 200 bottom time in open water 2 dives deeper than 15 metres / 50 feet	4 to 1	Nitrox Diver and Advanced Diver
29	KISS GEM Sidekick	18	Minimum of 60 minutes in confined water Minimum 5 dives Minimum 200 bottom time in open water 2 dives deeper than 15 metres / 50 feet	4 to 1	SDI Advanced Diver or equivalent, SDI or TDI Nitrox Diver or equivalent (May be combined)
30	Air Diluent Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver	18	Minimum of 60 minutes in confined water Minimum 7 dives Minimum 420 bottom time in open water Maximum depth 30 metres / 100 feet	4 to 1	Nitrox diver (may be combined with program) 20 logged dives
31	Air Diluent Closed Circuit Rebreather Decompression Procedures Diver	18	Minimum of 60 minutes in confined water Minimum 7 dives Minimum 420 bottom time in open water Maximum depth 40 metres / 130 feet	4 to 1	Advanced Nitrox and Decompression Procedures diver 50 logged dives OR • TDI Air Diluent CCR Diver certified or equivalent • 30 hours on the CCR unit Six months CCR diving experience
32	Helitrox Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver	18	Minimum time in confined water is 60 minutes 7 dives for a minimum time of 420 minutes Gradually increasing depth to a maximum depth of 45 metres / 150 feet	4 to 1	50 logged dives TDI Advanced Nitrox, Deco Procedures or Helitrox Diver or the equivalent OR TDI Air Dil Diver with 30 hours on the unit and 6 months CCR diving



## TDI Standards and Procedures

### Part 2: TDI Diver Standards

33	Mixed Gas Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver	18	6 dives, 5 deeper than 40 metres / 130 feet	3 to 1	TDI Air Diluent Decompression CCR diver or TDI Helitrox CCR diver, 50 rebreather hours over 50 logged dives on a specific unit
34	Advanced Mix Gas Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver	18	7 dives, 6 on mixed gas, 5 of the mixed gas dives must be decompression dives	3 to 1	TDI Mixed Gas Diluent CCR diver or equivalent from an agency recognized by TDI 100 CCR hours over 100 on a specific unit 50 percent of the dives must be deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet
35	Rebreather Cavern Diver	18	5 dives must be conducted 4 cavern dives with a minimum of 120 minutes conducted at 2 different locations	3 to 1	TDI Air Diluent CCR diver on specific unit 25 logged dives and 25 hours on specific unit
36	Rebreather Intro to Cave	18	1 open water evaluation dive must be conducted if student is new to the instructor or it has been more than 6 months since last cavern dive 4 single guideline cave dives with a total bottom time of 160 minutes at 2 different locations	3 to 1	TDI CCR Air Diluent Diver or equivalent TDI Rebreather Cavern Diver or equivalent OR TDI Introductory Cave Diver or equivalent 50 logged dives and 30 hours on the specific unit
37	Rebreather Full Cave Diver	18	8 cave dives with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 360 minutes at 3 different locations 1 site not used during the cavern or introductory cave courses At least 2 dives must be at least 60 minutes long	3 to 1	TDI CCR Air Diluent Decompression Procedures Diver or equivalent TDI Rebreather Introductory to Cave Diver Or TDI Full Cave Diver certification 50 logged dives and 50 hours on specific unit



## 1.2 Rebreather Training Courses

TDI offers training on the following CCR Units

Unit	Air Diluent	Air Diluent Decompression	Helitrox	Mixed Gas	Advanced Mixed Gas
Copis	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Defender	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Discovery MK VI / SE7EN	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ (SE7EN only)
Evolution	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hammerhead	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Inspiration	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
JJ	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
KISS	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Liberty	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Mark 15	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Megalodon	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Optima	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ouroboros	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pathfinder	✓	✓	✓	✓	--
Prism Topaz / Prism2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pelagian	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
rEvo	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Sentinel	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SF2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Submatix 100	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Titan	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Triton	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

*The air diluent, air diluent decompression procedures, Helitrox, mixed gas and advanced mixed gas CCR diver course standards contained in this manual are unit specific to the above CCRs .*







## 2. General Course Standards

These standards apply to all TDI Diver Courses and Specialties

### 2.1 Administrative

Instructors must ensure that all students complete the following forms – for each and every course and specialty the student participates in. These records must be kept for a minimum of seven years and must be complete prior to the start of the course. They are:

1. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
2. *TDI Medical Release Form (unless specifically not required in a non-diving course standard)*
  - a. If a student writes a yes to any question on the *TDI Medical release Form*, the student must provide written permission from a doctor before participating in confined or open water training for any course or specialty training. A physician-signed medical is valid for up to 12 months with no change in medical condition unless a longer valid term is indicated on a specific medical form.
3. *TDI Diver Registration Form* or preferably register the student online in the member's section of the TDI website (upon completion of the specified course)
4. *TDI Diver Training Record*; these training records must be kept for a minimum of 7 years
5. For all unit-specific CCR courses, instructor shall download student's dive logs of all training dives; these training records must be kept for a minimum of 7 years.

## 2.2 Accidents

Hopefully a member will never have to do this, however, if a member, were involved in an accident or simply witnessed an accident the *TDI Accident Report* Form must be completed by the member/witness and faxed to TDI Headquarters immediately after the accident happened. Please refer to TDI Standards Part 1, Section 6.4.8.

## 2.3 Definitions

**Assistant or Assisted by** = A person who is assisting a primary and certified instructor, IT staff instructor or instructor trainer for a course that they, the “assistant”, is not certified to teach. Assistants can be used for the purposes of additional supervision and to increase ratios where standards and environmental conditions allow. Assistants listed on registrations will receive experience credits for courses they have assisted with only if listed on the initial registration form.

**Co-Teach or 2nd Instructor** = A person who is certified to teach the course taking place and is working together with an also certified instructor, IT staff instructor or instructor trainer. The 2<sup>nd</sup> instructor will receive equal credit for the course if listed on the initial registration form.

**Student Prerequisites** = conditions that must be met by students prior to beginning a course. These cannot be completed during the course unless specifically outlined in the standard. Conditions listed here cannot be waived by the instructor. Written standards waivers for prerequisites may be issued by the HQ training department depending on the course, dive site, and the specific prior experience of course participants.

## 2.4 Confined Water Training

Confined water training must be conducted in a swimming pool or a confined body of water with the following conditions:

1. Approximately 3 metres / 10 feet of visibility
2. Calm surface conditions
3. Easy access to depths that allow students to stand with their head above water
4. Depths that allow skills to be adequately demonstrated
5. Equipment appropriate for the training site
6. Confined water training sites other than pools, must be approved by TDI Headquarters

## 2.5 Open Water Training

**The instructor, with the following considerations, must carefully choose an open water training site:**

1. Body of water similar to the regional diving conditions (ocean, lake, etc.)

**Note:** swimming pools are not considered an open water environment

2. Water clarity
3. Temperature above and below the water
4. Weather conditions
5. Water access
6. Equipment adequate for the conditions
7. Thermal protection appropriate for the conditions
8. A complete briefing that includes:
  - a. The dive site
  - b. Water conditions
  - c. Skills to be performed
  - d. Entry/Exit to be used
  - e. Emergency procedures
9. A complete debriefing that includes:
  - a. Performance of divers as a whole
  - b. Areas that need improvement
  - c. Environmental observations
  - d. Question and answers
10. Team diving concepts are to be emphasized on all dives in all TDI courses

## 2.6 Conducting training in an overhead environment (cavern, cave, wreck, etc.)

**TDI non-overhead courses may be conducted in an overhead environment under the following conditions:**

1. The student is already certified as a diver for the overhead environment they are being trained in and have logged at least 10 post-training dives in that environment
2. The instructor is a qualified TDI Instructor for the overhead environment the training is being conducted in
3. The instructor has previous experience diving at the site the training is being conducted

4. Both student and instructor are equipped appropriately for the environment
5. The course is NOT the student's initial training on a rebreather (SCR or CCR).
  - a. After accumulating 25 hours of rebreather diving experience, a student may participate in additional rebreather training in an overhead environment at the discretion of the instructor as long as all of the other conditions above have been met

## **2.7 Conducting Courses Using Closed Circuit Rebreather (CCR)**

**The following TDI Diver level courses may be conducted using CCR subject to the requirements below:**

**Advanced Nitrox, Advanced Wreck, Cavern, Introductory Cave, Full Cave, Mine Diver Level 1 and 2, Technical DPV**

1. Course student(s) must meet all course prerequisites and be fully certified on the CCR unit being used  
(Unless combining advanced nitrox training with CCR training)
2. Course instructor (s) must be a qualified TDI CCR Instructor on unit they are diving
3. Course instructor(s) must be a certified diver(s) on the CCR unit the student is diving

**Note:** Cylinder capacities used in the TDI Standards are based on manufacturer values or generalized conversions and are NOT exact conversions from metric to imperial due to variance in cylinder volume and working pressures. If you use metric cylinders, please use the metric size cylinder listed; likewise, if you use imperial cylinders, please use the imperial size cylinder listed, I.E. 3 litres / 18 cubic ft.

## 3. Intro to Tech

### 3.1 Introduction

The TDI Intro to Tech course introduces students to the world of technical diving. This course is designed as an introductory course to the TDI Advanced Nitrox course and the TDI Decompression Procedures Course. The objective of this course is to familiarize students with technical equipment configurations, to enhance open water diving skills (such as buoyancy, trim, and situational awareness), and to introduce students to advanced gas planning techniques within a no-decompression context. This course is strictly a no-decompression course; students are permitted to use enriched air nitrox (EAN) mixes, provided the gas mix is within their current level of certification. Intro to Tech may be combined with TDI Advanced Nitrox at the discretion of the instructor.

### 3.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of the course, graduates may engage in diving activities in a technical equipment configuration without direct supervision provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities and environmental conditions approximate those of training
3. Graduates may enroll in:
4. TDI Advanced Nitrox Course
5. TDI Decompression Procedures Course

### 3.3 Who May Teach

#### 1. Procedure One

A current and active status SDI Open Water Scuba Diver Instructor or TDI Nitrox Instructor who has completed a TDI Intro to Tech Instructor course conducted by a TDI Intro to Tech IT may be registered to teach.

#### 2. Procedure Two

An active status SDI Open Water Scuba Diver Instructor or TDI Nitrox Instructor who holds the ratings of TDI Advanced Nitrox and Decompression Procedures Diver certifications, or equivalent, may apply for an administrative upgrade to teach



### **3.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

#### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 6 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to further reduce this number as conditions dictate

### **3.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18, 15 with parental consent
2. Minimum certification an SDI Open Water Scuba Diver or equivalent
3. Provide proof of 25 logged open water dives

### **3.6 Course Structure and Duration**

#### **Open Water Execution**

1. A minimum of 3 dives must be conducted; All dives must be conducted at depths within the diver's current level of certification but no dives should exceed 23 metres / 75 feet
2. If the TDI Intro to Tech is taught in conjunction with Advanced Nitrox, only a total of 4 dives are required; more may be conducted at the discretion of the instructor

#### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

#### **Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6

## 3.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 3.8 Training Material

### Required material

*TDI Intro to Tech Manual and Knowledge Quest or eLearning*  
*TDI Intro to Tech Instructor Guide*

### Optional material

*TDI Advanced Nitrox Diving Manual*  
*TDI Decompression Procedures Manual*  
*TDI Intro to Tech PowerPoint Presentation*  
*TDI Intro to Tech Digital Instructor Resource*  
*TDI Intro To Tech Cue Cards*  
*TDI Intro To Tech Evaluation Slate*

## 3.9 Required Equipment

### The following equipment is required for this course:

1. Primary cylinder(s) cylinder volume appropriate for diving conditions and diver gas consumption
2. Primary regulators
  - a. Primary and alternate second stage required on all primary cylinder(s)
  - b. Submersible pressure gauges are required on all primary cylinder(s)
3. Depth gauge and automatic bottom timer and/or dive computer
4. Buoyancy compensator device appropriate for equipment configuration

5. Ascent reel with lift bag/surface marker buoy
  - a. Appropriate for maximum planned depth
  - b. Lift bag or surface marker buoy with adequate lift and size for the dive environment
6. Exposure protection appropriate for local diving condition
7. Slates / wet-notes

### **3.10 Required Subject Areas**

Instructors may use any materials they feel help in the presentation of the required subject areas. The following topics must be covered during the course:

1. Physics
  - a. Pressure review
2. Physiology
  - a. Ascent/descent rates
  - b. Hyperthermia
  - c. Hypothermia
  - d. Psychological aspects
3. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Single/double cylinder(s); valve options
  - b. Regulator options
  - c. Harness/BCD options
  - d. Computer, bottom timer, depth gauge options
  - e. Reels/spools options
  - f. Lift bag/surface marker bag options
  - g. Exposure protection options
  - h. Minimum equipment, bring only what is needed
  - i. Stream lining and stowing equipment
4. Dive Planning
  - a. Tables/computer dive planning and execution
  - b. Surface air consumption (SAC) rate calculations
  - c. Minimum gas reserve calculations for no-decompression dives
  - d. Environmental considerations
5. Procedures
  - a. Entry/exit strategies
  - b. Emergency strategies in case of gas failure/loss
  - c. Ascent/descent strategies

## **3.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**Students are required to successfully complete the following open water skills:**

### **Land drills**

1. Selection and preparation of equipment
2. Conduct team oriented skills (buddy checks) for lift bag deployment
3. Gas matching among buddy teams
4. Demonstrate familiarity with basic hand signals
5. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning with limits based on the team and personal gas consumption

### **Pre-dive drills**

1. Use S.T.A.R.T. before every dive
2. Stress analysis and mitigation

**\*START is S-drill (OOA drill and Bubble Check), Team (buddy equipment checks), Air (gas matching), Route (entry/exit and planned path underwater), Tables (depth, duration, waypoints and schedule).**

### **In-water drills**

1. Weight check
2. Demonstrate adequate buoyancy control (ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet)
3. Demonstrate adequate trim (ability to maintain horizontal during the descent, bottom and ascent portion of the dive)
4. Demonstrate no-silting propulsion techniques: frog kick, modified frog kick, modified flutter kick, backwards kick
5. Demonstrate the ability to perform the following exercises while maintaining trim and buoyancy in the water column:
  - a. Regulator exchange
  - b. Regulator recovery
  - c. Mask partial flood and clear with minimal air loss
  - d. Mask removal and clear with minimal air loss
6. Demonstrate the ability to perform a safety drill (S-drill) while maintaining trim and buoyancy in the water column

7. Demonstrate the ability to perform a valve drill while maintaining trim and buoyancy in the water column (if double cylinders are being used)
8. Demonstrate the ability to deploy a surface marker buoy or lift bag while maintaining trim and buoyancy in the water column
9. Show good situational awareness

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution

## **4. Technical DPV Diver**

### **4.1 Introduction**

The purpose of the TDI Technical Diver Propulsion Vehicle (DPV) course is to familiarize divers with the skills, knowledge, planning, organization, procedures, techniques, problems, and hazards of using DPVS. Upon completing the TDI Technical Diver Propulsion Vehicle course, the student should be able to: demonstrate comprehension of the practical knowledge necessary for technical DPV diving, properly plan and safely conduct technical DPV dives, and implement techniques and procedures to manage and minimize technical DPV diving hazards.

### **4.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in technical DPV diving activities without direct supervision so long as the following limits are adhered to:

1. Safety and decompression stops as appropriate or necessary
2. Planned dives do not exceed diver's current certification level

### **4.3 Who May Teach**

An active TDI Technical DPV Instructor.

### **4.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to insure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter.

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. NA

#### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 3 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate.

## 4.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18, 15 with parental consent
2. Certified as an SDI Open Water Scuba Diver or equivalent
3. Provide proof of at least 25 logged dives

## 4.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. Students must complete 2 DPV dives with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 60 minutes.
2. Dives must not exceed 40 metres / 130 feet

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 4

## 4.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 4.8 Required Equipment

**The following material is required:**

1. NA

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Cylinder(s), volume appropriate for planned dive, student gas consumption
2. First and second stage regulator(s) with alternate air source;
3. Submersible pressure gauge
4. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
5. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
6. Mask and fins
7. Cutting device
8. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
9. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
10. Whistle or other signaling device
11. DPV adequately configured for the environment
12. Reel with a minimum of 7.5 metres / 25 feet of line
13. Lift bag or surface marker buoy with adequate lift and size for the dive environment
14. Compass

## 4.9 Required Subject Areas

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Motivations for DPV diving
2. Advantages of DPV use
3. Equipment considerations
  - a. DPV options
  - b. DPV components
  - c. Rated burn time
  - d. Care and Maintenance
  - e. DPV rigging
4. Problem solving procedures
  - a. DPV malfunction or failure
  - b. Towing
  - c. Gas sharing with DPVs
  - d. Entanglement
  - e. Collision avoidance
  - f. Team separation



5. Environmental considerations
  - a. Appropriate vs. inappropriate dive locations
  - b. Suitable environmental conditions
  - c. Low impact DPV use
6. DPV diving techniques
  - a. Buoyancy and trim with DPV
  - b. Instigating directional and depth changes
  - c. DPV “parking”
  - d. DPV courtesy and etiquette
7. Dive planning and gas management
  - a. Turn time, turn distance, and turn pressure
  - b. Gas mix(es) and NDLs or decompression obligations

## **4.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
2. Equipment check and equipment matching
3. Bubble check
4. Demonstrate specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
5. Demonstrate proper buoyancy control
6. Demonstrate proper body posture
7. Demonstrate proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**The student must perform the following in-water skills:**

1. Proper use of DPV
2. Gas sharing ascent with DPVs clipped off.
3. Ascent with a disabled DPV
4. Tow a team member and his disabled DPV

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Perform all dive requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the dive environment
4. Log all dives

**4.11 To qualify to teach the TDI Technical DPV Diver Course an Instructor must:**

1. Be an active TDI Instructor
2. Provide proof of 25 logged DPV technical dives \*

**\* Technical Dive; Any dive involving decompression, additional cylinders, overhead environments such as wrecks, caves or mines.**

## **5. Sidemount Diver**

### **5.1 Introduction**

This course is designed to teach certified divers how to safely utilize side-mounted primary cylinders as an alternative to the traditional back-mounted configuration. This course can be combined with other TDI courses such as: Decompression Procedures, Extended Range, Trimix, Advanced Trimix and Advanced Wreck. If combined the standards for both courses must be met.

### **5.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in sidemount diving activities without direct supervision so long as the following limits are adhered to

1. Safety and decompression stops as appropriate or necessary.
2. Planned dives do not exceed diver's current certification level.

### **5.3 Who May Teach**

This course may be taught by any active TDI Sidemount Diving Instructor.

### **5.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter.

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

#### **Open Water Dives**

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor is allowed

### **5.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Minimum certification; SDI Open Water Scuba Diver or the equivalent

## 5.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Water Execution

1. Three open water dives are required with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 90 minutes
2. If Advanced Nitrox is taught in conjunction with TDI Sidemount, only a total of four (4) dives are required, more may be conducted at the discretion of the instructor, but all dives must be conducted at depths within the diver's current level of certification

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The suggested number of classroom and briefing hours is 4
2. Course must be taught over a minimum of 2 days

## 5.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 5.8 Required Equipment

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Dual cylinders, volume appropriate for planned dive, and student gas consumption
2. Two independent first and second stage regulators each with a submersible pressure gauge
3. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator appropriate for sidemount configuration
4. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
5. Mask and fins
6. Dive computer and a additional depth and timing device; backup computer recommended

**Instructor must wear full sidemount diving equipment during all water exercises**

## 5.9 Required Subject Areas

**Instructors may use any text or materials that they feel help present these topics.**

### **Required Material**

1. *SDI/TDI Sidemount Manual and Knowledge Quest or eLearning*
2. *SDI/TDI Sidemount Instructor Guide*

### **Optional Materials**

1. *TDI Sidemount Cue Cards*
2. *TDI Sidemount Evaluation Slate*

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Gas matching procedures to include dissimilar volumes
2. Gas management utilizing independent cylinders
3. Psychological considerations
4. Equipment considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Regulator options
  - c. Buoyancy compensator / harness options
  - d. Proper weighting
  - e. Equipment configurations

5. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
6. Problem solving
  - a. Gas-sharing
  - b. Gas hemorrhages
  - c. Light failure
  - d. Loss of visibility
  - e. Entanglement
  - f. Self rescue
7. Tight spaces
8. Conservation
9. Difficult water entries
10. S-Drills; specific to sidemount

## **5.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following land drills must be covered during this course:**

1. Land drills may be performed at the instructor's discretion

### **Pre-dive drills**

1. Use START before every dive \*START is an acronym for S-drill (Out of Gas drill and Bubble Check), Team (buddy equipment checks), Air (gas matching), Route (entry/exit and planned path underwater, Tables (depth, duration, waypoints and schedule)
2. Stress analysis and mitigation

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during dives:**

1. Demonstrate various propulsion techniques: frog kick, modified frog kick, modified flutter kick, backwards kick, helicopter turns, and hand pulling if appropriate for the environment
2. Demonstrate adequate buoyancy control; ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet
3. Demonstrate adequate trim; ability to maintain proper position during the descent, bottom and ascent portion of the dive
4. Demonstrate the ability to perform the following exercises while maintaining trim and buoyancy in the water column:
  - a. Unclipping and attaching sidemount cylinders
  - b. Perform gas switches with and without a mask

5. Demonstrate the ability to safely manage gas in independent cylinders
6. Demonstrate conservation, awareness, and back referencing techniques
7. Deploy lift bag
8. Carry additional cylinder(s); optional

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Perform all land drills and dive requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the environment
4. Log all dives

### **5.11 To qualify to teach the TDI Sidemount Diver Course an Instructor must:**

1. Be certified as a sidemount diver
2. Provide proof of 10 technical sidemount dives\*
3. Complete the course with an active TDI Sidemount IT

**\* Technical Dive; Any dive involving decompression, additional cylinders, overhead environments such as wrecks, caves or mines.**

## **6. Nitrox Diver**

### **6.1 Introduction**

This is the entry-level certification course for recreational divers wishing to utilize enriched air nitrox (EAN) as a breathing gas. The objective of this course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards, and proper procedures for using nitrox mixes from 22 through 40 percent oxygen content.

### **6.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course:

1. Graduates may engage in diving activities utilizing a single gas of EAN-22 to EAN-40, and not requiring decompression, without direct supervision. The training program does not qualify divers to make dives which require mandatory in-water decompression stops or dives using more than one breathing gas and/or rebreathers.

Graduates would be qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Advanced Nitrox Course
2. TDI Decompression Procedures Course
3. TDI Semi-closed Rebreather Course

### **6.3 Who May Teach**

Any active TDI Nitrox Instructor

### **6.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

#### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. Since entry level nitrox is essentially an informational and academic based course, no dives are specifically required as there are no skills to evaluate.
2. Optional dives are desirable to effectively demonstrate the advantages of EAN use in practical field use. If scheduled, no direct instructor supervision is required but dives should not be conducted in environments that may exceed the existing skill or depth levels of the student.



## 6.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18, 15 with parental consent
2. Have a minimum certification of open water diver or a current enrollment in an open water diver course

## 6.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. Two nitrox dives are recommended but are not required

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The suggested number of classroom hours is 3

## 6.7 Administrative Requirements

### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 6.8 Training Material

### Required material

*TDI Understanding Nitrox Diver Manual* or eLearning course

### Optional Material

TDI plastic EAD table

*TDI Understanding Nitrox PowerPoint*

## 6.9 Required Equipment

1. Nitrox cylinder for analyzing
2. Nitrox analyzer

## 6.10 Required Subject Areas

**The *TDI Understanding Nitrox* Manual or eLearning is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. History of Enriched Air Nitrox (EAN)
2. Physiology
  - a. Oxygen
  - b. Nitrogen
3. Physics
  - a. Pressure review
  - b. Partial pressures
4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Forty percent oxygen content and less
  - b. Above 40 percent oxygen content
5. Dive Tables
  - a. Equivalent air depth (EAD) introduction of concept only for demonstration
  - b. EAN tables
  - c. Switching mixes on repetitive dives
6. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) integrated
7. Advantages and Disadvantages of EAN
  - a. Use as air for physiological advantage with air tables or computers
  - b. Use to extend no-decompression bottom times or shorten surface intervals
  - c. Oxygen toxicity hazards and depth limits
  - d. Discussion of myths and facts regarding EAN mixtures
8. Procedures
  - a. Use and theory of oxygen analyzer
  - b. Gas analysis and logging
  - c. How to complete and sign a filling station's EAN fill log, including MOD and oxygen content
9. Common Mixing Procedures
  - a. Partial pressure blending
  - b. Continuous blending
  - c. Membrane separation system

## **6.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

### **Pre-dive**

1. Use TDI Tables to plan a nitrox dive taking advantage of EAD calculations
2. Create a simple written dive plan for a nitrox dive to an maximum operating depth (MOD) calculated with  $PO_2$  between 1.3 and 1.6 depending on environmental conditions
3. Demonstrate correct use of oxygen analyzer
4. Demonstrate correct cylinder management and labeling in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
5. Conduct simple pre-dive briefing (may be simulated if dives are not part of program)
6. Program nitrox computer, if used, with appropriate oxygen percentage
7. Log at least 1 nitrox cylinder analysis to include: MOD and oxygen content

### **In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Nitrox Course written examination
2. Demonstrate understanding of oxygen analysis for nitrox mixtures

## 7. Advanced Nitrox Diver

### 7.1 Introduction

This course examines the use of EAN-21 through 100 percent oxygen for optimal mixes to a depth of 40 metres / 130 feet. The objective of this course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures for utilizing EAN-21 through 100 percent oxygen for dives not requiring staged decompression. TDI Decompression Procedures or the Intro to Tech may be combined with this course at the discretion of the instructor.

### 7.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in diving activities utilizing EAN-21 through 100 percent oxygen without direct supervision provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities approximate those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Decompression Procedures Course
2. TDI Extended Range Course

### 7.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Advanced Nitrox Instructor

### 7.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 8 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

## **7.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18, 15 with parental consent
2. Minimum certification of TDI Nitrox Diver, or equivalent
3. Show proof of 25 logged open water dives
4. If this course is taught in conjunction with the TDI Decompression Procedures course, the minimum age is 18

## **7.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Open Water Execution**

1. Four dives are required with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 100 minutes
2. If advanced nitrox is taught in conjunction with decompression procedures\*, only a total of 6 dives are required, more may be conducted at the discretion of the instructor, with a maximum depth of 45 metres / 150 feet
3. If Advanced Nitrox is taught in conjunction with Intro to Tech or TDI Sidemount\*, only a total of four (4) dives are required, more may be conducted at the discretion of the instructor, but all dives must be conducted at depths within the diver's current level of certification and no dives should exceed 23 metres / 75 feet
4. Only 2 dives from advanced wreck course may be credited towards the total dives required

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6

\*A 3-way combination of TDI Intro to Tech or TDI Sidemount, Advanced Nitrox and Decompression Procedures is permitted with a minimum of 8 dives required. The prerequisites for advanced nitrox and decompression procedures diver must be met for this combination before starting the program.

## 7.7 Administrative Requirements

The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 7.8 Training Material

**Required material**

1. *TDI Advanced Nitrox Student Manual* or eLearning course

**Optional Material**

1. TDI EAD I PO<sub>2</sub> Tables
2. *TDI Advanced Nitrox PowerPoint Presentation*
3. *TDI Advanced Nitrox Cue Cards*
4. *TDI Advanced Nitrox Evaluation Slate*

## 7.9 Required Equipment

The following equipment is required for each student:

1. Alternative second stage octopus attached to a primary regulator or a redundant scuba unit; 1.9 litre / 13 cu ft minimum
2. A submersible pressure gauge
3. Depth gauge and automatic bottom timer and/or dive computer
4. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
5. Line cutting device
6. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment
7. Cylinder and regulator properly labeled and cleaned as required for EAN mixtures
8. Access to oxygen analyzer, may be supplied by instructor

## 7.10 Required Subject Areas

The *TDI Advanced Nitrox Manual* or eLearning is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:

1. Physics
  - a. Pressure review
2. Physiology
  - a. Hypoxia
  - b. Oxygen toxicity
    - i. Whole body oxygen toxicity units (OTU's)
    - ii. Central nervous system (CNS)
  - c. Nitrogen narcosis
  - d. Nitrogen absorption and elimination
  - e. Carbon dioxide toxicity
  - f. Carbon monoxide toxicity
3. Formula Work
  - a. Best mix computations
  - b. Maximum operating depth (MOD) of mixture computations
4. Equipments Considerations
  - a. Less than 40 percent oxygen content
  - b. More than 40 percent oxygen content
5. Dive Tables
  - a. Equivalent air depth with any table
  - b. Computer generated tables
6. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) integrated
7. Dive Planning
  - a. Operation planning
    - i. Gas requirements
    - ii. Oxygen limitations
    - iii. Nitrogen limitations
8. Common Mixing Procedures (instructor to demonstrate one method)
  - a. Partial pressure blending
  - b. Continuous blending
  - c. Membrane separation system
9. Decompression
  - a. Enriched air nitrox (EAN) usage as a decompression gas i.e. 50/50, 80/20 etc
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) for decompression
  - c. Advantages / disadvantages of multiple gas switches

## 7.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements

Maximum training depths shall not exceed 40 metres / 130 feet. The following open water skills must be completed by the student during all open water dives:

### Land Drills

1. Review of nitrox skills
2. Demonstrate correct use of oxygen analyzer including optimal procedure for calibration
3. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on personal gas consumption.
  - b. Limits based on oxygen exposures at planned depth with actual mix
  - c. Limits based on nitrogen absorption at planned depth with actual mix
4. Calculate and log CNS loading for each dive including cumulative exposure where appropriate
5. Demonstrate understanding of gas labeling in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
6. Demonstrate adherence to conventions regarding prep of equipment for oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) service
7. Program nitrox computer with appropriate oxygen percentage if used
8. Properly execute the planned dive within all predetermined limits

### In order to complete this course, students must:

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Advanced Nitrox course written examination
2. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution

### Pre-dive Drills

1. Use START\* before every dive
2. Stress analysis and mitigation

**\*START is S-drill (OOA drill and Bubble Check), Team (buddy equipment checks), Air (gas matching), Route (entry/exit and planned path underwater), Tables (depth, duration, waypoints and schedule).**



#### **In-water Drills**

1. Demonstrate buoyancy control; ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet
2. Show good awareness of buddy and other team members through communications, proximity and team oriented dive practices
3. Demonstrate ability to manage free flow from primary regulator in controlled fashion, shutdown cycle, and switch to back-up regulator
4. Conduct appropriate safety stop while maintaining neutral buoyancy
5. Demonstrate ability to share air with buddy as both recipient and donor in a controlled manner while maintaining position in water column
6. Demonstrate correct body position; appropriate trim, such as horizontal / streamlined when moving forward
7. Demonstrate proper stress analysis with self and dive buddy

## **8. Decompression Procedures Diver**

### **8.1 Introduction**

This course examines the theory, methods and procedures of planned stage decompression diving. This program is designed as a stand-alone course or it may be taught in conjunction with TDI Advanced Nitrox, Advanced Wreck, or Full Cave Course. The objective of this course is to train divers how to plan and conduct a standard staged decompression dive not exceeding a maximum depth of 45 metres / 150 feet. The most common equipment requirements, equipment set-up and decompression techniques are presented. Students are permitted to utilize enriched air nitrox (EAN) mixes or oxygen for decompression provided the gas mix is within their current certification level.

### **8.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in decompression diving activities without direct supervision provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities approximate those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Advanced Nitrox Course
2. TDI Extended Range Course
3. TDI Advanced Wreck Course
4. TDI Trimix Course

### **8.3 Who May Teach**

Any active TDI Decompression Procedures Instructor may teach this course

## **8.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

## **8.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Minimum certification of SDI Advanced Adventure Diver , Advanced Diver, or equivalent
3. Provide proof of 25 logged open water dives

## **8.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Open Water Execution**

1. Four dives are required, 2 of those dives must be deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet
2. If advanced nitrox is taught in conjunction with decompression procedures\* only a total of 6 dives are required
3. Only 2 dives from advanced wreck course may be credited towards the total dives required

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6

\*A 3-way combination of TDI Intro to Tech or TDI Sidemount, Advanced Nitrox and Decompression Procedures is permitted with a minimum of 8 dives required. The prerequisites for advanced nitrox and decompression procedures diver must be met for this combination before starting the program.

## 8.7 Administrative Requirements

**The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 8.8 Training Material

**Required material**

1. *TDI Decompression Procedures Student Manual* or eLearning course

**Optional Material**

1. *TDI Decompression Procedures PowerPoint Presentation*
2. *TDI Deco Procedures Cue Cards*
3. *TDI Deco Procedures Evaluation Slate*

## 8.9 Required Equipment

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Primary cylinder(s), cylinder volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption

**Note:** Independent and isolated back-mounted doubles, are allowed to be used.

2. Decompression mix cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate for the planned dive and student gas consumption with submersible pressure gauge
  - b. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
3. Depth gauge and automatic bottom timer and / or dive computer
4. Each cylinder shall be equipped with a first and second stage regulator
5. Submersible pressure gauges are required on all primary cylinders

6. Buoyancy compensator device(s) (BCD) adequate for equipment configuration
7. Line cutting device
8. Jon-line and other rigging lines as dictated by site conditions
9. Ascent reel with lift bag /surface marker buoy
  - a. Adequate for maximum planned depth
  - b. Adequate lift and size for the dive environment
10. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) analyzer; may be supplied by the instructor
11. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment
12. Underwater slate

## 8.10 Required Subject Areas

**The *TDI Decompression Procedures* Manual or eLearning is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Overview of Decompression Safety Stops Compared to Required Stops
2. Physics
  - a. Pressure review
3. Physiology
  - a. Mechanics of bubble formation
  - b. Advantages of hyperoxic mixes for decompression
  - c. Nitrogen absorption and elimination
  - d. Carbon dioxide toxicity
  - e. Ascent / Descent rates
  - f. Hyperthermia
  - g. Hypothermia
  - h. Psychological aspects
    - i. Task loading
    - ii. Stress
    - iii. Panic
    - iv. Time management
    - v. Equipment
4. Decompression Options
  - a. Air
  - b. Nitrox
  - c. Oxygen

5. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Twin cylinder or single cylinder option, valve options
  - b. Stage cylinder options
  - c. Regulator options
  - d. Harness / BCD options
  - e. Computer, depth gauge, bottom timer options
  - f. Ascent and navigation reels
  - g. Lift bags/surface marker buoys for drifting or free decompression
  - h. Jon-line or Garvin clips
  - i. Proper weighting and buoyancy control during dive phase and decompression
6. Dive Tables vs. Computers
  - a. Introduction and review of different models (Bühlmann, DCIEM, US Navy, etc)
  - b. Proper use of electronic multi-level dive computers for dive planning and decompression
    - i. Mix adjustable
    - ii. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) integrated
7. Dive Planning
  - a. Standard operation
    - i. Gas requirements
    - ii. Oxygen limitations
    - iii. Nitrogen limitations
  - b. Emergency planning
    - i. Omitted decompression
    - ii. Decompression sickness
    - iii. Equipment failure
8. Procedures
  - a. Primary and decompression gas
    - i. Normal operations
    - ii. Failure, loss or inadequate emergency procedures
    - iii. Analysis and logging
    - iv. Safeguards on decompression supply regulators
    - v. Rigging and deployment of decompression equipment
  - b. Descent
    - i. Methods of entry, down lines or free decent
    - ii. Organization of equipment carried on diver

- c. Ascent
  - i. Variable rates
  - ii. Trim and compensation
- d. Fixed or Drifting Decompression Methods
  - i. Up-lines fixed to bottom
  - ii. Reels and lift bags/surface marker buoys
  - iii. Free drifting stages or boat supplied
  - iv. Self-contained versus surface supply / rendezvous gas cylinders
- e. Support
  - i. From shore
  - ii. From descent line or fixed platform
  - iii. From live-aboard boat

## **8.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open water dives:**

1. Skills review from previous TDI skills requirements

### **Land Drills**

1. Selection and preparation of equipment suitable for soft overhead environment
2. Conduct team oriented drills, buddy checks, for lift bag deployment
3. Conduct team oriented drills, buddy checks, for gas switching procedures
4. Gas matching among buddy team
5. Demonstrate familiarity with basic hand signals
6. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on personal and team gas consumption
  - b. Exact dive and decompression profile

### **Pre-dive Drills**

1. Use START\* before every dive
2. Stress analysis and mitigation

**\*START is S-drill (OOA drill and Bubble Check), Team (buddy equipment checks), Air (gas matching), Route (entry/exit and planned path underwater), Tables (depth, duration, waypoints and schedule).**

**In-water Drills**

1. Demonstrate buoyancy control; ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet
2. Show good awareness of buddy and other team members through communications, proximity and team oriented dive practices
3. Demonstrate comfort swimming on surface and at depth carrying single decompression stage cylinder
4. Demonstrate ability to drop and retrieve single decompression cylinder while maintaining position in the water column
5. Demonstrate ability to deploy a lift bag solo and as member of team
6. Demonstrate controlled / staged ascent on lift bag / emergency ascent line (lost ascent line)
7. Remove and replace mask (deploy backup mask)
8. Demonstrate appropriate reaction to gas hemorrhage from manifold or first stage, SPG and primary regulator
9. React to BCD inflator malfunction; disconnect LP hose, dump gas and orally inflate BCD/Wing to neutral buoyancy
10. Demonstrate ability to confirm gas switch(es) at depth with buddy/team members
11. Buddy breathing decompression gas for at least 1 minute
12. Demonstrate appropriate reaction to simulated free-flowing decompression regulator
13. Demonstrate appropriate modifications to deco schedule in decompression emergency (over time, over depth) (to be simulated)
14. Demonstrate tired diver tow at depth and on surface, 30 metres / 100 feet lateral each
15. Complete a horizontal breath hold swim at depth for 15 metres / 45 feet
16. Properly execute the planned dive within all pre-determined limits
  - a. Assembly of diver carried equipment
  - b. Proper descent / ascent rates
  - c. Proper staged stop procedures
  - d. Monitoring of decompression status equipment; tables, computers, equipment
17. Contingency situations and problem solving, as appropriate by instructor
  - i. Omitted decompression.
  - ii. Extended bottom time profiles with increased decompression and recalculated schedules
  - iii. Failure to deploy lift bag and reel
  - iv. Missed up-line or missed boat anchor
  - v. Loss of decompression gas



18. A safety stop of at least 3 minutes shall be conducted on all no-decompression dives and proper staged decompression stops whenever and wherever mandated.
19. Demonstrate (simulated) emergency gas sharing at a stationary depth not to exceed 30 metres / 100 feet
20. Demonstrate emergency deployment of a backup regulator or bail-out scuba system containing bottom mix at a depth not exceeding 30 metres / 100 feet
21. Demonstrate the proper deployment, management and use of the bottom mix, decompression mix and travel mix, if used, including but not limited to:
  - a. Conservative gas management
  - b. Depth control to avoid descending too deep for mix
  - c. Show appropriate and timely responses to instruction / signals from the instructor and demonstrate buoyancy control and awareness throughout the dive

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Decompression Procedures Course written examination
2. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution

## 9. Extended Range Diver

### 9.1 Introduction

This course provides training and experience required to competently utilize air for dives up to 55 metres / 180 feet that requires staged decompression, utilizing nitrox mixtures or oxygen during decompression. The objective of this course is to train divers in the proper techniques, equipment requirements, and hazards of deep air diving to a maximum of 55 metres / 180 feet utilizing nitrox mixtures or oxygen for staged decompression.

### 9.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in decompression diving activities without direct supervision provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities approximate those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

4. TDI Advanced Wreck Course
5. TDI Trimix Course
6. TDI Advanced Trimix Course

### 9.3 Who May Teach

This course may be taught by any active TDI Extended Range Instructor

### 9.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

## 9.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Certified as a TDI Advanced Nitrox Diver and TDI Decompression Procedures Diver, or equivalents
3. Provide proof of a minimum of 100 logged dives, of which 25 must be deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet

## 9.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. Four dives with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 100 minutes
2. All dives must be deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet with 2 dives deeper than 40 metres / 130 feet
3. A maximum of 2 dives from advanced wreck course may be credited towards the total dives required, at the instructor's discretion

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 8

## 9.7 Administrative Requirements

### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 9.8 Training Material

### Required Material

1. *TDI Extended Range / Trimix Diver Manual* or eLearning course

### Optional Material

1. *TDI Extended Range / Trimix PowerPoint*
2. *Deep Diving; An Advanced Guide to Physiology, Procedures and Systems*, Revised 2<sup>nd</sup> edition 1995, by Bret Gilliam
3. *TDI Extended Range Cue Cards*
4. *TDI Extended Range Evaluation Slate*

## 9.9 Required Equipment

The following equipment is required for each student:

1. Bottom mix cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
  - b. Dual outlet valve, double manifold or independent doubles
  - c. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
2. Travel mix cylinder(s) if used
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
  - b. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
3. Decompression mix cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
  - b. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
4. Regulator(s)
  - a. Primary and primary redundant regulators required on all bottom mix cylinders
  - b. Submersible pressure gauges are required on all primary / bottom mix cylinder(s)
  - c. A contingency use long hose second stage should be designated and appropriately rigged to facilitate air sharing at depth if necessary
5. Buoyancy compensator device(s) (BCD) adequate for equipment configuration
6. Redundant depth and timing devices
7. Air decompression computers allowed for use as depth and timing devices

8. Redundant light system if needed for site conditions
9. Jon-line and other rigging lines as dictated by site conditions
10. Ascent reel with lift bag/surface marker buoy
  - a. Adequate for maximum planned depth
  - b. Adequate lift and size for the dive environment
11. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment
12. Two line cutting devices
13. Underwater slate (for decompression/contingency tables)

## 9.10 Required Subject Areas

**The *TDI Extended Range Manual* or eLearning is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. History of Deep Air Diving
2. Physics
  - a. Pressure review
  - b. Formulas for solving dive planning problems, maximum operating depth (MOD), best mix, etc
3. Physiology
  - a. Hypoxia
  - b. Oxygen toxicity
    - i. Whole body (OTUs)
    - ii. Central nervous system
  - c. Nitrogen narcosis
  - d. Nitrogen absorption and elimination
  - e. Carbon dioxide toxicity (CO<sub>2</sub>)
  - f. Carbon monoxide (CO)
  - g. Hyperthermia
  - h. Hypothermia
4. Decompression Options
  - a. Air
  - b. Nitrox
  - c. Oxygen
5. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Twin cylinder or single cylinder option
  - b. Stage cylinder options
  - c. Regulator options
  - d. Harness / BCD options
  - e. Computer / depth gauge / bottom timer options

- f. Ascent and navigation reels
  - g. Lift bags/surface marker buoys for drifting or free decompression
  - h. Lights
  - i. Redundant mask and knife
  - j. Jon-line or Garvin clips
- 6. Dive Tables
  - a. Introduction and review of different models (Bühlmann, DCIEM, U.S. Navy recommended)
  - b. Introduction to computer generated tables
- 7. Dive Planning
  - a. Operation planning
    - i. Support
    - ii. Teams
  - b. Team planning
    - i. Gas requirements
    - ii. Oxygen limitations
    - iii. Nitrogen limitations
  - c. Emergency planning
    - i. Omitted decompression
    - ii. Oxygen toxicity
    - iii. Decompression sickness
    - iv. General
- 8. Procedures
  - a. Bottom, travel and decompression gas
    - i. Normal operations
    - ii. Failure, loss or inadequate emergency procedures
    - iii. Analysis and logging
  - b. Descent
    - i. Methods of entry, down lines or free descent
    - ii. Recognizing narcosis
    - iii. Breathing
    - iv. Organization of equipment carried on diver
  - c. Ascent
    - i. Variable rates
    - ii. Trim and compensation
  - d. Support
  - e. Navigation
    - i. From shore
    - ii. From descent line
    - iii. From live-a-board vessel

## **9.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open water dives:**

**Note:** The maximum depth for this course is 55 metres / 180 feet

1. Skills review from previous TDI skills requirements

### **Land Drills**

1. Demonstrate familiarity with basic and intermediate hand signals
2. Selection and preparation of equipment suitable for soft overhead environment with long decompression obligations
3. Conduct team oriented drills for lift bag deployment and gas switching procedure
4. Drills for buddy rescue
5. Drills for toxed diver / unconscious diver ascent
6. Properly analyze all gas mixtures to be used
7. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on personal and team gas consumption
  - b. Limits based on oxygen exposures at planned depths for actual mixes
  - c. Limits based on nitrogen absorption at planned depths for actual mixes

### **Pre-dive Drills**

1. Use START\* before every dive
2. Stress analysis and mitigation
3. Gas matching among buddy team

**\*START is S-drill (OOA drill and Bubble Check), Team (buddy equipment checks), Air (gas matching), Route (entry/exit and planned path underwater), Tables (depth, duration, waypoints and schedule).**

### **In-water Drills**

1. Demonstrate buoyancy control; ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet
2. Show good awareness of buddy and other team members through communications, proximity and team oriented dive practices
3. Demonstrate competence managing 2 stage cylinders, either 2 deco gas or 1 deco and extra bottom gas, including drop and recovery while maintaining position in the water column

4. Demonstrate ability to confirm gas switches at depth with buddy/team members
5. Demonstrate lift bag deployment from depth and use of bag as back-up buoyancy device
6. Demonstrate air-sharing ascent from depth while one member of buddy team is without mask, both as a donor and recipient
7. Create contingency decompression schedule after simulated loss of decompression gas
8. Remove and replace mask, deploy back up mask
9. Demonstrate tired diver tow at depth and on surface; 30 metres / 100 feet lateral
10. Complete a horizontal breath-hold swim at depth for 15 metres / 50 feet with mask off or blacked out
11. Properly execute the planned dive within all pre-determined limits
12. Demonstrate the proper procedures for switching and isolating a malfunctioning regulator. This skill is to be performed at a depth no deeper than 40 metres / 130 feet
13. Demonstrate the proper navigational techniques for the specific dive
14. During 2 dives, demonstrate an ascent with ascent reel and lift bag and perform staged decompression
15. During 1 of the dives, tow a simulated unconscious diver, while at depth, 9 metres / 30 feet to ascent line and simulate an emergency rescue ascent technique

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Extended Range Course written examination
2. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature and sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution



## **10. Helitrox Diver**

### **10.1 Introduction**

The Helitrox course examines the theory, methods and procedures for planned stage decompression diving utilizing Helium in the breathing mixture. This program is designed as a stand-alone course or it may be taught in conjunction with TDI Advanced Nitrox at the discretion of the instructor. The objective of this course is to train divers how to plan and conduct a standard staged decompression dive not exceeding a maximum depth of 45 metres / 150 feet. The most common equipment requirements, gear set-up, and decompression techniques are presented. Students are permitted to utilize Enriched Air Nitrox and Helium mixes with no greater than 35% He content, and up to 100% oxygen for decompression diving provided the gas mix is within their current certification level. Breathing gas mixtures containing more than 35% Helium (+/-5%) or less than 21% oxygen are not permitted (+/- 1%).

### **10.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in decompression diving activities without direct supervision, utilizing helium and/or nitrox mixtures so long as:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities approximate those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training
4. Breathing mixtures do not contain more than 35% Helium (+/- 5%) or less than 21% Oxygen (+/- 1%) and are within their current diving certification level

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Extended Range Course
2. TDI Trimix

### **10.3 Who May Teach**

Any active TDI Helitrox Instructor who has been approved by TDI Headquarters Training Department

## **10.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor: it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate.

## **10.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Certified as an SDI Advanced Diver (with Deep specialty) or TDI Intro to Tech or equivalent
3. Certified as a TDI Advanced Nitrox Diver or equivalent. Student may be enrolled in both the TDI Helitrox and Advanced Nitrox course at the same time
4. Provide proof of 50 logged dives

## **10.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Open Water Execution**

1. 4 dives are required, 2 of those dives must be deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet
2. If Advanced Nitrox is taught in conjunction with Helitrox, a minimum of 6 dives are required

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration**

1. A minimum of 6 hours for classroom and briefing hours is required

## 10.7 Administrative Requirements

**The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 10.8 Training Material

**Required material**

1. *TDI Decompression Procedures* Student Manual or eLearning
2. *TDI Extended Range/Trimix* Student Manual or eLearning

**Optional Material**

1. Corresponding TDI PowerPoint presentations
2. *TDI Advanced Trimix* Manual
3. *TDI Helitrox* Cue Cards
4. *TDI Helitrox* Evaluation Slate

## 10.9 Required Equipment

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Primary cylinder(s); cylinder volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
2. Decompression mix cylinder(s)
3. Cylinder volume appropriate for the planned dive and student gas consumption with submersible pressure gauge
4. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations.
5. Depth gauge and automatic bottom timer and I or dive computer programmable with appropriate breathing mixture(s)
6. Regulator(s)
7. Primary and alternate 2<sup>nd</sup> stage required on all primary cylinders
8. Submersible pressure gauges are required on all primary cylinders

9. Buoyancy compensator device(s) (BCD)( appropriate for equipment configuration
10. Line cutting device
11. Jon-line and other rigging lines as dictated by site conditions
12. Ascent reel with lift bag /surface marker buoy
13. Appropriate for maximum planned depth
14. Lift bag or surface marker buoy with adequate lift and size for the dive environment
15. Oxygen analyzer and helium analyzer; may be supplied by the instructor
16. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment
17. Underwater slate

## 10.10 Required Subject Areas

**The *TDI Decompression Procedures and Extended Range/Trimix Manuals* or eLearning are mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Overview of decompression “safety stops” compared to required stops
2. Physics
  - a. Pressure review
3. Physiology
  - a. Mechanics of bubble formation
  - b. Advantages of hyperoxic mixes for decompression
  - c. Advantages of helium mixes for bottom gas
  - d. Hypoxia
  - e. Oxygen toxicity
    - i. Whole Body (OTUs)
    - ii. Central Nervous System (CNS)
  - f. Nitrogen Narcosis
  - g. Nitrogen and Helium Absorption and Elimination
  - h. Carbon Dioxide Toxicity
  - i. Carbon Monoxide Toxicity
  - j. Helium
    - i. HPNS
    - ii. Effects on respiration
    - iii. Effects as an insulator
  - k. Counter Diffusion
  - l. Hyperthermia

- m. Hypothermia
- n. Ascent / Descent rates
- o. Psychological aspects
  - i. Task loading
  - ii. Stress
  - iii. Panic
  - iv. Time Management
  - v. Equipment
- 4. Decompression Options
  - a. Air
  - b. Nitrox
  - c. Oxygen
- 5. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Twin cylinder or single cylinder option, valve options
  - b. Stage cylinder options
  - c. Regulator Options
  - d. Harness / BCD options
  - e. Computer, depth gauge, bottom timer options
  - f. Ascent and navigation reels
  - g. Lift bags/surface marker buoys for drifting or free decompression
  - h. Jon-line or Garvin clips
  - i. Proper weighting and buoyancy control during dive phase and decompression
- 6. Dive Tables vs. Computers
  - a. Introduction and review of different models (Bühlmann, DCIEM, US Navy, etc)
  - b. Proper use of electronic multi-level dive computers for dive planning and decompression
    - i. Mix adjustable
    - ii. O<sub>2</sub> integrated
- 7. Dive Planning
  - a. Standard Operation
    - i. Gas requirements
    - ii. Oxygen limitations
    - iii. Nitrogen limitations
    - iv. Helium limitations
  - b. Emergency planning
    - i. Omitted decompression
    - ii. Decompression sickness
    - iii. Equipment failure

**8. Procedures**

- a. Primary and Decompression Gas
  - i. Normal operations
  - ii. Failure, loss or inadequate emergency procedures
  - iii. Analysis and logging
  - iv. Safeguards on decompression supply regulators
  - v. Rigging and deployment of decompression equipment
- b. Descent
  - i. Methods of entry, down lines or free decent
  - ii. Organization of equipment carried on diver
- c. Ascent
  - i. Variable rates
  - ii. Trim and compensation
- d. Fixed or Drifting Decompression Methods
  - i. Up-lines fixed to bottom
  - ii. Reels and lift bags/surface marker buoys
  - iii. Free drifting stages or boat supplied
  - iv. Self-contained versus surface supply / rendezvous gas cylinders
- e. Support
  - i. From shore
  - ii. From descent line or fixed platform
  - iii. From live-aboard boat

## **10.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open water dives:**

1. Skills review from previous TDI skills requirements

### **Land Drills:**

1. Selection and preparation of equipment suitable for soft overhead environment
2. Conduct team oriented drills (buddy checks) for lift bag deployment
3. Conduct team oriented drills (buddy checks) for gas switching procedures
4. Gas matching among buddy team
5. Demonstrate familiarity with basic hand signals
6. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on personal and team gas consumption.
  - b. Exact dive and decompression profile.

**Pre-dive Drills:**

1. Use START\* before every dive
2. Stress analysis and mitigation

**In-water Drills:**

1. Demonstrate buoyancy control (ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet)
2. Show good awareness of buddy and other team members through communications, proximity and team oriented dive practices
3. Demonstrate comfort swimming on surface and at depth carrying single decompression stage bottle
4. Demonstrate ability to drop and retrieve single decompression cylinder while maintaining position in the water column
5. Demonstrate ability to deploy a lift bag solo and as member of team
6. Demonstrate controlled / staged ascent on lift bag / emergency ascent line (lost ascent line)
7. Remove and replace mask (deploy backup mask)
8. Demonstrate appropriate reaction to gas hemorrhage from manifold or first stage, SPG and primary regulator
9. React to BCD inflator malfunction (disconnect LP hose, dump gas and orally inflate BCD/Wing to neutral buoyancy)
10. Demonstrate ability to confirm gas switch(es) at depth with buddy/team members
11. Buddy breathing deco gas for at least one minute
12. Demonstrate appropriate reaction to simulated free-flowing deco regulator
13. Demonstrate appropriate modifications to deco schedule in decompression emergency (over time, over depth) (to be simulated)
14. Demonstrate tired diver tow at depth and on surface (30 meters / 90 feet lateral each)
15. Complete a horizontal breath hold swim at depth for 15 meters / 45 feet
16. Properly execute the planned dive within all pre-determined limits
  - a. Assembly of diver carried equipment
  - b. Proper descent / ascent rates
  - c. Proper staged stop procedures
  - d. Monitoring of decompression status equipment (tables, computers, equipment)

17. Contingency Situations and Problem Solving (as appropriate by instructor)
  - a. Omitted decompression
  - b. Extended bottom time profiles with increased decompression and re-calculated schedules
  - c. Failure to deploy lift bag and reel
  - d. Missed up-line or missed boat anchor
  - e. Loss of decompression gas
18. A safety stop of at least 3 minutes shall be conducted on all no-decompression dives and proper staged decompression stops whenever and wherever mandated.
19. Demonstrate (simulated) emergency gas sharing at a stationary depth not to exceed 30 metres / 100 feet
20. Demonstrate emergency deployment of a backup regulator or bail-out scuba system containing bottom mix at a depth not to exceed 30 metres / 100 feet
21. Demonstrate the proper deployment, management and use of the bottom mix, decompression mix and travel mix (if used), including but not limited to:
  - a. Conservative gas management
  - b. Depth control to avoid descending too deep for mix
  - c. Show appropriate and timely responses to instruction / signals from the instructor and demonstrate buoyancy control and awareness throughout the dive

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Decompression Procedures Course written examination
2. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution



## 11. Advanced Wreck Diver

### 11.1 Introduction

This course provides training and experience to competently conduct advanced wreck dives. This program includes penetration skills and techniques. Depths shall not exceed the level in which the diver is trained and competent, but in no case shall the maximum depth in this program exceed 55 metres / 180 feet. The objective of this course is to train divers in the proper techniques, equipment requirements and hazards of wreck diving.

### 11.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in wreck diving activities without direct supervision provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities approximate those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training

### 11.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Advanced Wreck Diving Instructor may teach this course

### 11.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

### 11.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Certified as an SDI Advanced Diver or equivalent
3. Provide proof of a minimum of 50 logged dives
4. Be certified as SDI Wreck Diver or TDI Cavern Diver or equivalent

## 11.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. Six penetration / overhead dives and an accumulated bottom time of 100 minutes.
2. Only 2 dives from the TDI Advanced Wreck course may be credited towards the total dives required for TDI Advanced Nitrox, Decompression Procedures, Extended Range or Entry Level Trimix

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 8

## 11.7 Administrative Requirements

### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration* form to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 11.8 Training Material

### Required material

1. *TDI Advanced Wreck Diving Diver Manual*

### Optional Material

1. *TDI Advanced Wreck Cue Cards*
2. *TDI Advanced Wreck Evaluation Slate*

## 11.9 Required Equipment

The following equipment is required for each student

1. Primary cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate for the planned dive and student gas consumption rate
  - b. Dual valve, double manifold or independent doubles
  - c. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
2. Travel or decompression cylinders as required by site conditions labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
3. Regulators
  - a. Primary and primary redundant required on all primary breathing cylinders
  - b. Submersible pressure gauges are required on all primary cylinder(s)
  - c. A contingency use long hose second stage should be designated and appropriately rigged to facilitate air sharing at depth if necessary
4. Buoyancy compensator device(s) (BCD) adequate for the open water environment
5. Primary and back-up depth and timing devices.
6. Air or multi-gas decompression computers allowed for use as depth and timing devices
7. Light Systems
  - a. Primary
  - b. Back-up
8. Ascent reel with lift bag/surface marker buoy or up-line
  - a. Adequate for the planned maximum depth
  - b. Adequate lift and size for the dive environment
9. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment
10. Two line cutting devices
11. Underwater slate
12. Reels
  - a. Primary penetration reel
  - b. Safety reel
13. Options that the instructor may require
  - a. Submersible dive tables
  - b. Bail-out cylinder with regulator
  - c. Jon-line
  - d. Compass, surface signaling device (flare, strobe, etc.)

## 11.10 Required Subject Areas

**The following land drills must be covered during this course**

1. Guideline Use
2. Guideline Following
3. Emergency Procedures

**The following topic must be covered during this course. Instructors may use any text or materials that they feel best presents these topics.**

1. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Redundant scuba
  - b. Lights
  - c. Reels
  - d. Tools
2. Procedures
  - a. Pre-dive
  - b. Pre-penetration
  - c. Penetration
  - d. Exiting the wreck
3. Hazards of Wreck Diving and Overhead Environments
  - a. Disorientation
  - b. Reduced visibility
  - c. Entrapment
  - d. Entanglement
  - e. Environmental.
  - f. Loss of gas supply
  - g. Line traps
  - h. Separated buddy teams
4. Penetration Lines
  - a. Types
  - b. Proper use
5. Research and Locating
  - a. Local regulations
  - b. Sources of information
  - c. Tools.
  - d. Surveying
6. Contingency Planning
  - a. Chamber locations
  - b. Communications
  - c. Emergency gases

## **11.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The student must complete the following skills during wreck dives. All dives should be conducted with a maximum depth no deeper than the certified student's capabilities.**

### **Land Drills**

1. Proper deployment of guideline
2. Proper technique for following guideline
3. Use safety spool / reel in lost line procedures
4. Use safety spool / reel in lost buddy procedures
5. Proper technique for touch contact communication
6. Properly analyze all gas mixtures to be used
7. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on personal and team gas consumption
  - b. Limits based on oxygen exposures at planned depths for actual mixes
  - c. Limits based on nitrogen absorption at planned depths for actual mixes

### **Pre-dive Drills**

1. Use START\* before every dive
2. Stress analysis and mitigation

**\*START is S-drill (OOA drill and Bubble Check), Team (buddy equipment checks), Air (gas matching), Route (entry/exit and planned path underwater), Tables (depth, duration, waypoints and schedule).**

### **In-water Drills**

1. Demonstrate specialized propulsion techniques for an overhead environment
2. Deploy guideline with attention to immediate environment and conditions
3. Demonstrate lost line and lost buddy drills
4. Follow guideline, eyes open and eyes closed, or blacked out mask
5. Air share with team member(s) while exiting confined space, eyes open and eyes closed, or blacked out mask while following guideline.
6. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
7. Demonstrate light and hand communications with team members
8. Demonstrate touch contact with team members

9. Simulate primary light failure and deployment of backup light
10. Demonstrate correct techniques for staging deco/contingency gas outside wreck
11. Demonstrate proper procedure for isolating and switching a malfunctioning regulator; this drill should be conducted no deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet
12. Demonstrate ability to deploy a lift bag from depth as emergency ascent line
13. Demonstrate ability to deploy a lift bag from depth as alternative buoyancy device
14. Execute simulated emergency blue water ascent with marker deployment from staged stop below 6 metres / 20 feet; simulated or actual boating
15. Demonstrate understanding of basic wreck layout and special considerations for navigating wreck
16. Deal with diver presenting signs of serious decompression sickness (DCS) at surface; simulated emergency evacuation
17. Properly execute the planned dive within all pre-determined limits
18. Demonstrate the proper navigational techniques for the specific dive
19. Demonstrate air sharing with long hose through a restriction
20. Deployment of lift bag /surface marker buoy or up line for decompression
21. Silt-out procedures

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Complete all field exercise and open water requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Advanced Wreck Course written examination

## **12. Trimix Diver**

### **12.1 Introduction**

The TDI Trimix course provides the training required to competently and safely utilize breathing gases containing helium for dives that require staged decompression, utilizing nitrox and / or oxygen mixtures during decompression to a maximum depth of 60 metres / 200 feet. The objective of this course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures of utilizing custom oxygen / helium / nitrogen mixtures as breathing gases. Gas mixes are not to have any less than 18 percent oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>).

### **12.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in technical diving activities utilizing custom trimix mixtures without direct supervision provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities approximate those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training
4. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) percentages are 18 percent or higher

### **12.3 Who May Teach**

Any active TDI Trimix Instructor may teach this course

### **12.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

#### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

## 12.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Minimum certification as a TDI Advanced Nitrox Diver and TDI Decompression Procedures Diver, or equivalent
3. Provide proof of a minimum 100 logged dives

## 12.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution:

1. Four decompression dives using trimix as bottom gas are required with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 100 minutes
2. Two of the dives should be deeper than 40 metres / 130 feet
3. A maximum of 2 dives from the Advanced Wreck course may be credited towards the total dives required, at the instructor's discretion.

### Course Structure:

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration:

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 8

## 12.7 Administrative Requirements

### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

Upon successful completion of a TDI course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website



## 12.8 Training Material

### Required material

1. *TDI Extended Range / Trimix* Diver Manual or eLearning

### Optional Material

1. *TDI Extended Range / Trimix* PowerPoint
2. *TDI Trimix* Cue Cards
3. *TDI Trimix* Evaluation Slate

## 12.9 Required Equipment

### The following equipment is required for each student:

1. Bottom mix cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate to complete all planned decompression on bottom mix
  - b. Dual outlet valve, double manifold or independent doubles
  - c. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
2. Decompression mix cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume should contain a minimum of 1.5 times the gas required for the planned decompression
  - b. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
3. Suit inflation cylinder, required for dry suit divers only
4. Regulators
  - a. Primary and primary redundant required on all bottom mix cylinder(s)
  - b. Submersible pressure gauges are required on all primary / bottom mix cylinders
  - c. A contingency use long hose second stage should be designated and appropriately rigged to facilitate air sharing at depth if necessary
  - d. It is strongly recommended that the 3 required regulators be all DIN or all yoke
5. Buoyancy compensator device(s) (BCD) adequate for equipment configuration
6. Redundant depth and timing devices
7. Air decompression computers are allowed for use as depth and timing devices, provided they have a gauge mode
8. Redundant light system if required by site

9. Ascent reel with lift bag/surface marker buoy
  - a. Adequate for maximum planned depth
  - b. Adequate lift and size for the dive environment
10. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment
11. Line cutting device
12. Underwater slate, (for decompression / contingency tables
13. Helium analyzer, recommended

## 12.10 Required Subject Areas

**The *TDI Extended Range / Trimix Manual* or eLearning is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Physics
  - a. Pressure review
2. Physiology
  - a. Hypoxia
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
    - i. Whole Body (OTU's)
    - ii. Central nervous system (CNS)
  - c. Nitrogen narcosis
  - d. Nitrogen and helium absorption and elimination
  - e. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
  - f. Carbon monoxide (CO) toxicity
  - g. Helium
    - i. HPNS
    - ii. Effects on respiration
    - iii. Effects as an insulator
  - h. Counter diffusion
    - i. Hyperthermia
    - j. Hypothermia
3. Decompression Options
  - a. Air
  - b. Nitrox
  - c. Helium

4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Stage cylinders options
  - c. Suit inflation options
  - d. Regulator options
  - e. Harness / BCD options
  - f. Computer / depth gauge / bottom timer options
  - g. Ascent and navigation reels
  - h. Lift bags/surface marker buoys
  - i. Lights
  - j. Redundant mask and knife
  - k. Jon-line
5. Dive Tables
  - a. Computer generated tables
  - b. DCIEM Heliox Tables or other published tables
6. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
    - i. Support
    - ii. Teams
  - b. Team planning
    - i. Gas requirements
    - ii. Oxygen limitations
    - iii. Inert gas limitations
  - c. Emergency planning
    - i. Omitted decompression
    - ii. Oxygen toxicity
    - iii. Analysis and logging
    - iv. General
7. Procedures
  - a. Bottom, travel and decompression gas
    - i. Normal operations
    - ii. Failure, loss or inadequate emergency procedures
    - iii. Analysis and logging

## 12.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements

The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open-water dives. It is recommended that all dives be conducted between 30 metres / 100 feet and 60 metres / 200 feet. Gas mixes are not to have any less than 18 percent oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>).

1. Skills review from previous TDI skills requirements

### Land Drills

1. Demonstrate familiarity with basic and intermediate hand signals
2. Select and prepare equipment suitable for soft overhead environment with long decompression obligations
3. Conduct team oriented drills for lift bag deployment and gas switching procedure
4. Drills for buddy rescue
5. Properly analyze all gas mixtures to be used
6. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on personal and team gas consumption
  - b. Limits based on oxygen exposures at planned depths for actual mixes
  - c. Limits based on inert gas absorption at planned depths with actual mixes

### Pre-dive Drills

1. Use START\* before every dive
2. Stress analysis and mitigation

**\*START is S-drill (OOA drill and Bubble Check), Team (buddy equipment checks), Air (gas matching), Route (entry/exit and planned path underwater), Tables (depth, duration, waypoints and schedule).**

### In-water Drills

1. Show good awareness of buddy and other team members through communications, proximity and team oriented dive practices
2. Demonstrate competence managing 2 stage cylinders, either 2 deco gas or 1 deco and 1 extra bottom gas, including drop and recovery while maintaining position in the water column
3. Demonstrate ability to confirm gas switches at depth with buddy/team members

4. Demonstrate lift bag deployment from depth and use of bag as back-up buoyancy device
5. Demonstrate air-sharing ascent from depth while one member of buddy team is without mask , both as donor and recipient
6. Create contingency decompression schedule after simulated loss of decompression gas
7. Remove and replace mask, deploy backup mask
8. Demonstrate controlled ascent with simulated toxed diver including surface tow at least 30 metres / 100 feet with equipment removal on surface, in water too deep to stand in
9. Complete a horizontal breath-hold swim at depth for 15 metres / 50 feet with mask off or blacked out
10. Properly execute the planned dive within all predetermined limits
11. Demonstrate the proper navigational techniques for the specific dive
12. On 2 of the dives, demonstrate an ascent with ascent reel and lift bag and perform staged decompression
13. Demonstrate the proper procedures for switching and isolating a malfunctioning primary regulator This exercise should not be practiced deeper than 40 metres / 130 feet
14. Demonstrate buoyancy control; ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Trimix Course written examination
2. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution

## 13. Advanced Trimix Diver

### 13.1 Introduction

The TDI Advanced Trimix course provides the training required to competently and safely utilize breathing gases containing helium for dives that require staged decompression, utilizing nitrox and / or oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) mixtures during decompression to a maximum depth of 100 metres / 330 feet. The objective of this course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures of utilizing custom oxygen / helium / nitrogen mixtures as breathing gases.

### 13.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in technical diving activities utilizing custom Trimix mixtures without direct supervision provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The area of activities approximates those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training

### 13.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Advanced Trimix Instructor may teach this course

### 13.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

### 13.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Minimum certification TDI Extended Range Diver or TDI Trimix Diver, or equivalent
3. Provide proof of a minimum 100 logged dives with 25 deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet
4. Provide proof of prior logged experience w/ double cylinders and any other unfamiliar equipment such as a dry suit

### 13.6 Course Structure and Duration

#### Open Water Execution

1. Four dives with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 100 minutes
2. At least 2 dives should be deeper than 70 metres / 230 feet

#### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

#### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 8

### 13.7 Administrative Requirements

#### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

#### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 13.8 Training Material

### Required material

1. *TDI Advanced Trimix Diver Manual* or eLearning course

### Optional Material

2. *TDI Advanced Trimix PowerPoint Presentation*
3. *TDI Advanced Trimix Cue Cards*
4. *TDI Advanced Trimix Evaluation Slate*

## 13.9 Required Equipment

The following equipment is required for each student:

1. Bottom mix cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
  - b. Dual outlet valve, double manifold or independent doubles
  - c. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
2. Travel mix cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
  - b. Labeled in accordance with TDI Standards
3. Decompression mix cylinder(s)
  - a. Cylinder volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
  - b. Labeled in accordance with local practices and/or regulations
4. Suit inflation cylinder, required for dry suit divers only
5. Regulators
  - a. Primary and primary redundant required on all bottom mix cylinder(s)
  - b. Submersible pressure gauges are required on all primary bottom mix cylinders
  - c. A contingency use long hose second stage should be designated and appropriately rigged to facilitate air sharing at depth if necessary
  - d. It is strongly recommended that all 4 required regulators be all DIN or all 4 yoke
6. Buoyancy compensator device(s) (BCD) adequate for equipment configuration
7. Redundant depth and timing devices; air decompression computers allowed for use as depth and timing devices



8. Redundant light system if required by site
9. Ascent reel with lift bag/surface marker buoy
  - a. Adequate for maximum planned depth
  - b. Adequate lift and size for the dive environment
10. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment
11. Line cutting device
12. Underwater slate, for decompression / contingency tables
13. Helium analyzer, recommended

### **13.10 Required Subject Areas**

**The *TDI Advanced Trimix* Manual or eLearning is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Physics
  - a. Pressure review
2. Physiology
  - a. Hypoxia
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
    - i. Whole Body (OTUs)
    - ii. Central nervous system (CNS)
  - c. Nitrogen narcosis
  - d. Nitrogen and helium absorption and elimination
  - e. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
  - f. Carbon monoxide (CO) toxicity
  - g. Helium
    - i. HPNS
    - ii. Effects on respiration
    - iii. Effects as an insulator
  - h. Counter diffusion
    - i. Hyperthermia
    - j. Hypothermia
3. Decompression Options
  - a. Air
  - b. Nitrox
  - c. Helium

4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Stage cylinders options
  - c. Suit inflation options
  - d. Regulator options
  - e. Harness / BCD options
  - f. Computer / depth gauge bottom timer options
  - g. Ascent and navigation reels
  - h. Lift bags/surface marker buoys
  - i. Lights
  - j. Redundant mask and knife
  - k. Jon-line
5. Dive Tables
  - a. Computer generated tables
  - b. DCIEM Helitrox Tables and / or other published tables
6. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
    - i. Support
    - ii. Teams
  - b. Team planning
    - i. Gas requirements
    - ii. Oxygen limitations
    - iii. Inert gas limitations
  - c. Emergency planning
    - i. Omitted decompression
    - ii. Oxygen toxicity
    - iii. Analysis and logging
    - iv. General
7. Procedures
  - a. Bottom, travel and decompression gas
    - i. Normal operations
    - ii. Failure, loss or inadequate emergency procedures
    - iii. Analysis and logging

## **13.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open-water dives. It is recommended that all dives be conducted between 55 metres / 180 feet and 100 metres / 330 feet.**

1. Skills review from previous TDI skills requirements including all skills from entry-level mix or extended range

### **Land Drills**

1. Demonstrate familiarity with basic and intermediate hand signals
2. Selection and preparation of equipment suitable for soft overhead environment with long decompression obligations
3. Conduct team oriented drills for lift bag deployment and gas switching procedure
4. Drills for buddy rescue
5. Properly analyze all gas mixtures to be used

### **Pre-dive Drills**

1. Use START\* before every dive
2. Stress analysis and mitigation
3. Gas matching among buddy team
4. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on personal and team gas consumption
  - b. Limits based on oxygen exposures at planned depths for actual mixes
  - c. Limits based on inert gas absorption at planned depths with actual mixes

**\*START is S-drill (OOA drill and Bubble Check), Team (buddy equipment checks), Air (gas matching), Route (entry/exit and planned path underwater), Tables (depth, duration, waypoints and schedule).**

### **In-water Drills**

1. Demonstrate buoyancy control; ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet
2. Show good awareness of buddy and other team members through communications, proximity and team oriented dive practices
3. Demonstrate competence managing three stage cylinders, either 3 deco gas or 2 deco and extra bottom gas, including drop and recovery while maintaining position in the water column

4. Ability to manage multiple failures in adverse conditions
5. Complete a horizontal breath-hold swim at depth for 20 metres / 66 feet with mask off or blacked out
6. Deploy lift bag while sharing air on buddy's long hose
7. Properly execute the planned dive within all pre-determined limits
8. Demonstrate the proper navigational techniques for the specific dive
9. On 2 of the dives, demonstrate an ascent with ascent reel and lift bag and perform staged decompression
10. Demonstrate the proper procedures for switching and isolating a malfunctioning primary regulator; this exercise should not be practiced deeper than 40 metres / 130 feet

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Advanced Trimix Course written examination
2. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution

## 14. Nitrox Gas Blender

### 14.1 Introduction

This course provides the training required to allow candidates to competently and safely blend nitrox gas. The objective of this course is to train candidates in the proper techniques, equipment requirements and hazards involved in blending nitrox gases for recreational scuba.

### 14.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in the blending of nitrox gases, without direct supervision.

### 14.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Nitrox Gas Blender Instructor may teach this course

### 14.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. N/A

### 14.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18

### 14.6 Course Structure and Duration

#### Open Water Execution

1. N/A

#### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

#### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 2

## 14.7 Administrative Requirements

The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *International Training General Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk – for non-SCUBA courses Form*

Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 14.8 Required Equipment

The following are required for this course:

1. *TDI Nitrox Gas Blending Manual*
2. *TDI Nitrox Gas Blending PowerPoint Presentation*
3. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) analyzer, instructor may provide

## 14.9 Required Subject Areas

The *TDI Nitrox Gas Blending Manual* is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics.

1. The Responsibility of the Gas Blender
2. Gases of Diving
  - a. Air
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>)
  - c. Nitrogen
3. Oxygen Handling
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) hazards
  - b. Causes and prevention of oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) fire
  - c. Oxygen system design
  - d. Local regulations for gas blending and handling
4. Gas Production Equipment
  - a. Compressors
  - b. Cylinders
  - c. Filtration systems
  - d. Analog gauges

5. Mixing Techniques
  - a. General considerations
  - b. Continuous blending systems
  - c. De-nitrogenated air systems
  - d. Pre-mix systems
  - e. Partial pressure blending mathematics
6. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) Analysis
  - a. Procedures
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) analyzers
7. Cylinder Handling and Sign Out

## **14.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Candidates must successfully blend and analyze 5 cylinders of nitrox gas, all cylinders must be +/- 1 percent of target amount of oxygen
2. Candidate must satisfactorily complete a nitrox fill log to include: MOD and oxygen percentage
3. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Nitrox Gas Blender Course written examination
4. Demonstrate understanding of nitrox blending and oxygen analysis

## **15. Advanced Gas Blender**

### **15.1 Introduction**

This course enables the successful candidate to engage in the blending of oxygen and helium based gasses. The objective of this course is to train candidates in the proper procedures needed for the preparation and blending of high quality nitrox and trimix gases for use in technical diving.

### **15.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course candidates will be able to prepare high quality scuba gases.

### **15.3 Who May Teach**

Any active TDI Advanced Gas Blending Instructor may teach this course

### **15.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

#### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. N/A

### **15.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of certification as a TDI Nitrox Gas Blender or equivalent



## 15.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. N/A

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6

## 15.7 Administrative Requirements

### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *International Training General Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk – for non-SCUBA courses Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 15.8 Training Material

### Required material

1. *TDI Advanced Gas Blender Manual*

## 15.9 Required Equipment

### The following are required for this course:

1. Oxygen analyzer (instructor may provide).
2. Helium analyzer (instructor may provide)

## 15.10 Required Subject Areas

The *TDI Advanced Gas Blender Manual* is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:

1. The Responsibility of the Gas Blender
2. Gases of Diving
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>)
  - b. Nitrogen
  - c. Helium
  - d. Other gases
3. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) Handling
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) hazards
  - b. Causes and prevention of oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) fire
  - c. Oxygen system design
  - d. Local regulations for gas blending and handling
  - e. Oxygen compatible systems components
4. Gas Production Equipment
  - a. Compressors
  - b. Cylinders
  - c. Filtration systems
  - d. Gauges
5. Mixing Techniques
  - a. General considerations
  - b. Continuous blending systems
  - c. Membrane separation systems
  - d. Pre-mix systems
  - e. Partial pressure blending
    - i. Mathematics of partial pressure
    - ii. Mixing by weight (optional)
6. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) Analysis
  - a. Procedures
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) analyzers
7. Cylinder Handling and Sign Out
8. Helium analyzer, recommended

## **15.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Candidates must successfully blend and analyze a minimum of 5 cylinders of nitrox and 3 cylinders of Trimix, all cylinders must be +/- 1 percent of target amount of oxygen and +/- 3 percent helium
2. Candidate must satisfactorily complete a nitrox fill log to include: MOD and oxygen percentage
3. Satisfactorily completes the TDI Advanced Gas Blender Course written examination
4. Demonstrate proficiency in blending and analysis of nitrox and trimix gases

## 16. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) Equipment Service Technician

### 16.1 Introduction

This course enables the successful candidate to engage in the preparation of scuba equipment for Technical Diving Gases. The objective of this course is to train candidates in the proper procedures required for oxygen equipment cleaning. This course may be combined with the TDI Visual Inspection Procedures course at the discretion of the instructor. .

### 16.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course candidates will be able to prepare scuba equipment, according to their certification level. There are two levels of certification, as follows:

1. Equipment O<sub>2</sub> service technician: Qualified to service scuba regulators, cylinders, valves and manifolds for use with EAN and other technical diving gases
2. Cylinder O<sub>2</sub> service technician: Qualified to service scuba cylinders, valves and manifolds for use with EAN and other technical diving gases

### 16.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Service Technician Instructor may teach this course

### 16.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. N/A

## 16.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of:
  - a. Certification as a TDI Nitrox Gas Blender or equivalent
  - b. VIP certification through a recognized agency\*
  - c. Certification through a recognized manufacturing company regulator clinic\*\*
  - d. Employment through a recognized scuba related facility, manufacturer/distributor or proof of intent to acquire such employment

**\*VIP certification may be offered in combination with this course**

**\*\*Not required if training as TDI Cylinder O<sub>2</sub> Service Technician only**

## 16.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. N/A

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level; Visual inspection procedures (VIP) may be combined with this course by O<sub>2</sub> service technician instructors who also hold the VIP instructor rating

### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6

## 16.7 Administrative Requirements

### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *International Training General Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk – for non-SCUBA courses Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 16.8 Training Material

### Required material

1. *TDI Equipment Service Technician* Manual

### Optional Material

1. *TDI Equipment Service Technician* PowerPoint Presentation

## 16.9 Required Equipment

1. None

## 16.10 Required Subject Areas

The *TDI Equipment Service Technician* Manual is mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. Required academic subject areas are the same for both levels of certification:

1. The Responsibility of the Service Technician
2. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) Handling
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) compatible systems components
3. Equipment Servicing
  - a. Materials for use in oxygen cleaned systems
    - i. Lubricants
    - ii. O-rings
    - iii. Cleaning chemicals
  - b. Procedures of oxygen cleaning
    - i. Cylinders
    - ii. Valves
    - iii. Regulators
    - iv. System components
4. Gas Production Equipment
  - a. Compressors
  - b. Cylinders
  - c. Filtration systems
  - d. Gauges

5. Mixing Techniques
  - a. General considerations
  - b. Continuous blending systems
  - c. Membrane separation systems
  - d. Pre-mix systems
  - e. Partial pressure blending
    - i. Mathematics of partial pressure
    - ii. Mixing by weight (optional)
6. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) Analysis
  - a. Procedures
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) analyzers
7. Cylinder Handling and Sign Out

## **16.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Candidates must successfully service a cylinder valve and regulator\* for enriched air nitrox (EAN) use
2. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Service Technician Course written examination
3. Demonstrate proficiency in servicing scuba equipment for use with enriched air nitrox (EAN)

**\*Regulator service not required if training as Cylinder O<sub>2</sub> Service Technician only**

**Note:** To upgrade from TDI Cylinder to TDI Equipment O<sub>2</sub> Service Technician, verification of certification through a recognized manufacturing company regulator clinic is required. Additionally, practical training and evaluation in regulator oxygen servicing must be completed with an active TDI O<sub>2</sub> Service Technician Instructor (+ any associated refresher training required by the instructor), who must then register the certification as per the course administration requirements

## 17. Cavern Discovery

### 17.1 Introduction

This course is designed to develop the minimum skills and knowledge for guided cavern diving within the limits of light penetration; in addition outlines specific hazards associated with cave diving. The Cavern Discovery course is not intended to provide instruction for cave diving environments. The objective of this course is to allow recreational divers to dive in the cavern environment under direct supervision of an active Cavern Diver Instructor.

### 17.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course graduates may:

1. Cavern dive under the direct supervision of an active TDI Cavern instructor
2. Enroll in a TDI Cavern Diver Course

### 17.3 Who May Teach

1. Any active TDI Cavern, Intro to Cave or Cave Instructor may teach this Course:

### 17.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions) Optional

1. A maximum of 4 students per active TDI instructor

#### Cavern

1. A maximum of 2 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed; ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints
2. Daylight zone, i.e. within natural light of the cavern entrance
3. Penetration is limited to 1/3 of a single diving cylinder or “1/6 in double tanks”
4. 61 linear metres / 200 linear feet from the surface
5. 40 metres / 130 feet maximum depth
6. No decompression diving
7. No restrictions; no areas too small for 2 divers to pass side-by-side
8. Safety stops as appropriate or necessary



9. Maintain a continuous guideline
10. Proper cavern diving equipment is used
11. No removal of life support equipment shall be permitted within the overhead environment
12. Neither instructors or participants are allowed to carry or use still, or video, camera during this program. A certified assistant may photograph or video participants.

## **17.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 15 with parental consent
2. Provide proof of certification as an SDI Open Water Scuba Diver or equivalent
3. Provide proof of a minimum of 25 dives

## **17.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Water Execution**

1. Instructors shall assess participant's comfort, buoyancy control, and propulsion technique in open water prior to entering the overhead environment
2. One cavern dive

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 1 hour
2. Course must be conducted over a minimum of 1 day

## 17.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment and certifications
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration* Form to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 17.8 Required Equipment

### Suggested reading materials:

1. *TDI Diving In Overhead Environments* manual

### The following equipment is required for each student:

1. Primary cylinder, volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
2. Regulator with pressure gauge and alternate air source; although not required, it is suggested one regulator be mounted on a hose approximately 2 metres / 7 feet in length
3. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
4. Exposure suit adequate for cavern environment
5. Mask and fins, NO snorkel
6. Line cutting device
7. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
8. One primary cavern-diving reel with length appropriate for intended dive (instructor may provide)
9. Two battery powered lights, with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
10. Computer or watch (bottom timer) and depth gauge
11. Slate or wet notes and pencil (recommended)
12. Submersible dive tables or backup dive computer (recommended)
13. Weight system

### Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises

## 17.9 Required Subject Areas

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Policy for Cavern Diving
2. Gas Matching Procedures and Management to Include Dissimilar Volume
3. Psychological Considerations
4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Regulator options
  - c. Buoyancy compensator device / harness options
  - d. Reel options
  - e. Proper weighting
5. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signals
6. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques
7. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
8. Cavern environment
  - a. Geology
    - i. Bottom
    - ii. Ceiling
  - b. Local access requirements
  - c. Land owner relations
9. Cavern Conservation
10. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions
11. Accident Analysis
12. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
13. Cavern Diving Etiquette

## **17.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following land drills must be covered during this course prior to the guided cavern dive(s):**

1. How to:
  - a. Properly share air and exit
  - b. Properly follow a guideline
  - c. Touch contact communication

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate:
  - a. Adequate pre-dive planning
  - b. Equipment check and equipment matching
  - c. Bubble check
  - d. Specialized propulsion techniques
  - e. Proper buoyancy control
  - f. Proper body posture
  - g. Proper stress analysis (detection and management)
2. Referencing as back-up navigation
3. Anti-silting techniques
4. Simulate a primary light failure, and deploy back up light and follow guideline
5. If diver uses a dual valve system, air/gas valve management

**Note:** No removal of life support equipment shall be permitted within the overhead environment

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Perform all land drills and cavern dive requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cavern environment
4. Log all dives

## 18. Cavern Diver

### 18.1 Introduction

This course is designed to develop the minimum skills and knowledge for cavern and overhead environment diving within the limits of light penetration; in addition outlines specific hazards associated with cave diving. The cavern diver course is not intended to provide instruction for cave diving environments. The objective of this course is to train divers in the proper planning, procedures, techniques and hazards of cavern diving.

### 18.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in cavern diving activities without direct supervision provided the graduates adhere to the following limits:

1. Daylight zone, i.e. within natural light of the cavern entrance
2. Penetration is limited to 1/3 of a single diving cylinder or 1/6th if using double cylinders
3. 61 linear metres / 200 linear feet from the surface
4. 40 metres / 130 feet maximum depth
5. No decompression diving
6. No restrictions; no areas too small for 2 divers to pass side-by-side
7. Safety stops as appropriate or necessary
8. Maintain a continuous guideline
9. Proper cavern diving equipment is used
10. No removal of life support equipment shall be permitted within the overhead environment

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

11. TDI Intro to Cave course

### 18.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Cavern Instructor may teach this course

## **18.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. A maximum of 6 students per active TDI instructor

### **Cavern**

1. A maximum of 4 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed; ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

## **18.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18, 15 with parental consent
2. Provide proof of an SDI Open Water Scuba Diver or equivalent
3. Provide proof of a minimum of 25 dives
4. Divers must have a deep diver specialty certification or be able to provide proof of experience in order to dive deeper than 18 metres / 60 feet in this course

## **18.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Water Execution**

1. Four cavern dives with a total bottom time of 80 minutes conducted at 2 different sites

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6
2. Course must be conducted over a minimum of 2 days

## 18.7 Administrative Requirements

**The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment and certifications
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 18.8 Required Equipment

**The following are required for this course:**

1. *TDI Cavern Diver manual and Knowledge Quest or eLearning*
2. *TDI Cavern Diver Instructor Guide*

**Other suggested reading materials:**

1. *Basic Cave Diving – A Blueprint for Survival*
2. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* manual or eLearning

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Primary cylinder, volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption; students are permitted to use double cylinders, but would be limited to the 1/6 air rule
2. Regulator with pressure gauge and alternate air source; although not required, it is suggested one regulator be mounted on a hose approximately 2 metres / 7 feet in length
3. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD)
4. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
5. Mask and fins
6. Line cutting device
7. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
8. One primary reel with length appropriate for intended dive
9. Two battery powered lights, each with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
10. Computer or watch (bottom timer) and depth gauge
11. Slate or wet notes and pencil
12. Submersible dive tables or backup dive computer (recommended)
13. Three directional line arrows

**Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises**

## 18.9 Required Subject Areas

The following topics must be covered during this course:

1. Policy for Cavern Diving
2. Gas Matching Procedures and Management to Include Dissimilar Volume
3. Psychological Considerations
4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Regulator options
  - c. Buoyancy compensator device / harness options
  - d. Reel options
  - e. Proper weighting
5. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signals
6. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques
7. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
8. Cavern environment
  - a. Geology
    - i. Bottom
    - ii. Ceiling
  - b. Local access requirements
  - c. Land owner relations
9. Cavern Conservation
10. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions
11. Accident Analysis
12. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
13. Cavern Diving Etiquette



## 18.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements

**The following land drills must be covered during this course:**

1. How to:
  - a. Properly deploy a guideline
  - b. Properly follow a guideline
  - c. Touch contact communicate
  - d. Correctly deploy directional markers

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate:
  - a. Adequate pre-dive planning
  - b. Equipment check and equipment matching
  - c. Bubble check
  - d. Specialized propulsion techniques
  - e. Proper buoyancy control
  - f. Proper body posture
  - g. Proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during cavern dives:**

1. Properly deploy a guideline
2. Properly follow a guideline with eyes open and closed; simulating loss of visibility
3. Air share with a buddy with eyes open, following the guideline
4. Air share with a buddy with eyes closed and use touch contact, following the guideline
5. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
6. Demonstrate light / hand -signals and touch contact
7. Explore cavern
8. Referencing as back-up navigation
9. Anti-silting techniques
10. Simulate a primary light failure, and deploy back up light and follow guideline
11. If diver uses a dual valve system, air/gas valve management

**Note:** No removal of life support equipment shall be permitted within the overhead environment

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Perform all land drills and cavern dive requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cavern environment
4. Log all dives

## 19. Intro to Cave Diver

### 19.1 Introduction

This course is an introduction to the basic principles of cave diving utilizing a single primary guide line. Introductory cave diving is the second level in the development of safe techniques for cave diving, directly building upon the cavern diver course. This introduction to cave diving is not intended to train divers for all facets of cave diving. The objective of this course is the perfection of skills taught in the cavern diving program, in addition to the adoption of additional techniques and procedures required for elementary cave dives.

### 19.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in single guideline cave diving activities without direct supervision provided the graduates adhere to the following limits:

1. Penetration is limited to 1/3 of a single diving cylinder or 1/6th if using double cylinders
2. 40 metres / 130 feet maximum depth
3. No decompression diving
4. No restrictions; no areas too small for 2 divers to pass side-by-side
5. Maintain a single continuous guideline
6. Proper cave diving equipment is used
7. No removal of life support equipment shall be permitted within the overhead environment

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Cave course

### 19.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Intro to Cave Instructor may teach this course

## **19.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

### **Cave Dives**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

## **19.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18, 15 with parental consent
2. Provide proof of certification as a TDI Cavern Diver or equivalent or be currently enrolled in a TDI Cavern course

## **19.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Water Execution**

1. Minimum of 4 single guideline cave dives with a total bottom time of 100 minutes conducted at 2 different sites

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 4
2. Course must be taught over 2 days
3. If this course is combined with the TDI Cavern Diver course, a minimum of 3 days, 8 dives and 180 minutes bottom time is required. All skills from the TDI Cavern course must be completed before any dives can be conducted beyond the natural light zone. A minimum of 2 cavern dives and a minimum of 4 intro cave dives must be conducted in the combined courses.

## 19.7 Administrative Requirements

**The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 19.8 Required Equipment

**The following are required for this course:**

1. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Manual (or TDI Overhead eLearning course)
2. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Instructor Guide

**Other suggested reading materials:**

1. *Basic Cave Diving – A Blueprint for Survival*
2. *Cavern Measureless to Man*

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Primary cylinder(s); volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
2. Dual-orifice (Y) or (H) valve, double cylinders or dual valve manifold
3. Two independent first and second stage regulators; one regulator equipped with a long hose
4. Submersible pressure gauge
5. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
6. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
7. Mask and fins
8. Line cutting device
9. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
10. Safety reel/spool with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline

11. One primary reel for the team with length appropriate for intended dive
12. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
13. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
14. Submersible dive tables or backup dive computer
15. Three directional line arrows

**Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises**

## **19.9 Required Subject Areas**

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Policy for Cave Diving
2. Gas Matching Procedures and Management to Include Dissimilar Volumes
3. Psychological Considerations
4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Regulator options
  - c. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) / harness options
  - d. Reel options
  - e. Proper weighting
  - f. Equipment configurations
5. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signals
6. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques
7. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
8. Cave Environment
  - a. Geology
    - i. Bottom
    - ii. Ceiling
  - b. Local access requirements
  - c. Land owner relations
9. Conservation

10. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions
11. Accident Analysis
12. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
13. Cave Diving Etiquette

## **19.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following land drills must be covered during this course:**

1. How to properly deploy a guideline
2. How to properly follow a guideline
3. Use of safety reel in lost diver procedures
4. Use of safety reel in lost line drill

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate:
  - a. Adequate pre-dive planning
  - b. Equipment check and equipment matching
  - c. Bubble check
  - d. Specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
  - e. Proper buoyancy control
  - f. Proper body posture
  - g. Proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during cave dives:**

1. Properly deploy a guideline
2. Properly use line markers
3. Properly follow a guideline with eyes open and closed, simulating loss of visibility
4. Air share with a buddy with eyes open, following the guideline
5. Air share with a buddy with lights off or simulating lights off, using touch contact, following the guideline
6. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
7. Demonstrate light / hand -signals and touch contact
8. Conservation and awareness techniques

9. Referencing as back-up navigation
10. Demonstrate adequate anti-silting techniques
11. Simulate a primary light failure, and use back light to exit the cave
12. Demonstrate lost line and lost diver drills

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Intro Cave Diver Course written examination
2. Perform all land drills and cave dive requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cavern environment
5. Log all dives

## 20. Full Cave Diver

### 20.1 Introduction

This course is the third stage of training in the series of TDI's Cave Diver development program. Advanced cave dive planning, the practical execution of different types of cave systems and scenarios divers encounter are presented. This cave diving course is not intended to prepare divers for evaluating all facets of cave diving. The objective of this course is to expand and critique previous skills accomplished in the TDI Cavern and Intro to Cave Diving programs. Emphasis is placed upon dive planning and skill perfection through actual cave penetration.

### 20.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in cave diving activities without direct supervision provided the graduates adhere to the following limits:

1. Penetration is limited to the 1/3 air rule
2. 40 metres / 130 feet maximum depth
3. No equipment removal in cave
4. Safety and decompression stops as appropriate or necessary if trained as TDI Decompression Procedures Diver or equivalent
5. Maintain a continuous guideline
6. Proper cave diving equipment is used

### 20.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Full Cave Diving Instructor may teach this course

### 20.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Cave Dives

1. A maximum of 3 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate



## 20.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Minimum certification as a TDI Introductory Cave Diver or equivalent
3. If Decompression dives are to be conducted in training, student must be TDI Decompression Procedures certified or this training may be conducted concurrently. If courses are taught concurrently, ALL requirements for both courses must be met and registrations processed upon completion. If courses are taught concurrently, the more conservative depth limit is to be followed

## 20.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. 8 cave dives are required with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 240 minutes at 3 different sites
2. At least 1 of these sites should be a location not utilized in training during the cavern or introductory cave courses
3. For divers entering the cave program without cavern / introductory cave diving certification, 16 cave dives with 420 minutes of total bottom, not including decompression time, are required

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The suggested number of classroom and briefing hours is 6
2. Course must be taught in no less than 4 days
3. If the TDI Cavern and Intro to Cave diving courses are combined with Full Cave, the combined course must be at least 7 days long

## 20.7 Administrative Requirements

### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment and certifications
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 20.8 Required Equipment

**The following are the required for this course:**

1. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Manual (or TDI Overhead eLearning course)
2. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Instructor Guide

**Other suggested reading materials:**

1. *Basic Cave Diving – A Blueprint for Survival*
2. *Cavern Measureless to Man*

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Dual cylinders, volume appropriate for planned dive, student gas consumption
2. Two independent first and second stage regulators; one regulator equipped with a long hose
3. Submersible pressure gauge
4. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
5. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
6. Mask and fins
7. Two line cutting devices
8. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
9. Safety reel/spool with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline. A second safety reel/spool is recommended.
10. One primary reel for the team with length appropriate for intended dive
11. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
12. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
13. Submersible dive tables or back up dive computer
14. Three directional line arrows
15. One non- directional line marker
16. Reel(s)/spool(s) with sufficient guideline for planned jump(s) or gap(s).
17. It is recommended that the team properly mark decompression cylinders and stage them, in any dive where decompression is planned, at least 1 stop deeper than the planned decompression obligation

**Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises**

## 20.9 Required Subject Areas

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Policy for Cave Diving
2. Gas Matching Procedures and Management to Include Dissimilar Volumes
3. Psychological Considerations
4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Regulator options
  - c. Buoyancy compensator device/ harness options
  - d. Reel options
  - e. Proper weighting
  - f. Equipment configurations
5. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signal
6. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques
7. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
  - c. Decompression theory and its application to cave diving
8. Cave Environment
  - a. Geology
    - i. Bottom
    - ii. Ceiling
  - b. Local access requirements
  - c. Land owner relations
9. Conservation
10. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions
11. Accident Analysis
12. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
13. Cave Diving Etiquette

## 20.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements

**The following land drills must be covered during this course:**

1. How to properly deploy a guideline
2. How to properly follow a guideline
3. Use of safety reel in lost diver procedures
4. Use of safety reel in lost line drill

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
2. Equipment check and equipment matching
3. Bubble check
4. Demonstrate specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
5. Demonstrate proper buoyancy control
6. Demonstrate proper body posture
7. Demonstrate proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during cave dives:**

1. Properly deploy a guideline
2. Properly use directional and non directional line markers
3. Properly follow a guideline with eyes open and closed (simulating loss of visibility)
4. Air share with a buddy with eyes open , following the guideline
5. Air share with a buddy with lights off or simulating lights off, using touch contact, following the guideline
6. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
7. Demonstrate light / hand -signals and touch contact
8. Conservation and awareness techniques
9. Referencing as back-up navigation
10. Demonstrate adequate anti-silting techniques
11. Simulate a primary light failure, and use back light to exit the cave
12. Demonstrate lost line and lost diver drills
13. Demonstrate use of reels to perform jumps and gaps required in circuits and traverses to maintain a continuous guideline to open water

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Cave Diver Course written examination
2. Perform all land drills and cave dive requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cave environment
5. Log all dives

## 21. Underwater Cave Surveying Diver

### 21.1 Introduction

This course is designed to give the trained cave diver the minimum knowledge and basic fundamentals of how to survey in the unique underwater cave environment. The intention of this program is to encourage a standardization of cave surveying on all projects; encourage the use of cave maps in dive planning while increasing the diver's awareness and knowledge of the surroundings in this environment. Safe techniques, procedures and skill perfection associated with surveying in cave diving is emphasized.

### 21.2 Who May Teach

This course may be taught by any active TDI Underwater Cave Surveying Instructor.

### 21.3 Qualifications of Graduates / Limits of Training

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in cave surveying diving activities without direct supervision, so long as the following limits are adhered to:

1. Penetration is limited to one-third air rule, or more conservative air-plan at the instructor's discretion
2. 39 metres/ 130 feet maximum depth
3. 6 metres / 20 feet minimum starting visibility
4. No equipment removal in the cave
5. Students are encouraged to gain experience before attempting to plan and execute complex cave dives
6. Perform safety and decompression stops appropriate or necessary

### 21.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter.

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 2 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

## 21.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of a TDI Full Cave Diver certification or equivalent
3. Provide proof of at least 25 non-training full cave dives

## 21.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level. Adequate time to ensure comprehension and ability to perform skills is required.

### Course Structure

1. Two survey cave dives are required with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 60 minutes

### Duration

1. The suggested number of classroom and briefing hours is 8; minimum number of days to complete the program is 2

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 21.7 Required Materials

1. *Basic Underwater Cave Surveying* by John Burge, NSS-CDS
2. Note pad and pencils
3. Basic calculator (can square and exact square roots) or scientific calculator
4. Scaling ruler
5. Graph paper
6. Circular protractor

## 21.8 Required Equipment

The following equipment is required for each student:

1. Primary cylinders, minimum volume is 22 litres / 160 cubic ft, manifold system recommended
2. Two independent first and second stage regulators; one regulator equipped with a long hose
3. Submersible pressure gauge
4. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
5. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
6. Mask and fins, *NO* snorkel
7. Line cutting device
8. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
9. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
10. Submersible dive tables or backup dive computer
11. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
12. One primary cave-diving reel with length appropriate for intended dive
13. Jump/Gap reel 15 metres / 50 feet of line
14. Three directional line arrows
15. One non-directional marker
16. Underwater compass and bulls-eye level mounted on slate

**Note:** It is recommended the team pre-position decompression cylinders approximately 1 stop deeper than the planned decompression depth on any dive where decompression is planned. Cylinders should be clearly marked and easily identifiable, even in no-visibility conditions. Each cylinder must have a regulator and submersible pressure attached.

**Note:** It is recommended the instructor have oxygen and first aid kit available for the surface support. In addition adequate drinking fluids should be available for all students, instructional staff and surface support personnel to prevent dehydration.

## 21.9 Required Subject Areas

1. Decompression Theory and its Application to Survey diving
2. Gas Matching Procedures/Management
3. Accident Analysis
4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Compass readings
  - b. Compass errors
  - c. Streamlining
5. Body Posture and Buoyancy Control
6. Survey Techniques
  - a. Sketching
  - b. Tie-off stations
  - c. Vertical surveying
  - d. Large chambers
  - e. Extended passages
  - f. Radial surveys
7. Review of Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
    - i. Line following
    - ii. Team separation
    - iii. Communication
8. Survey Process
  - a. Data collection
  - b. Data verification
  - c. Data preparation
9. Symbolism
10. Cartography
  - a. Single line maps
  - b. High grade maps
11. Cave Environment/Conservation
12. Land Owner Relations
13. Local Access Requirements



## **21.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The student must complete the following in-water skills during the survey cave dives:**

1. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
2. Equipment check and S-drill should be second nature with each dive
3. Demonstrate proper use of guideline and reels
4. Students are to critique their own dives while the instructor supervises this process
5. The maximum depth for this course is 40 metres / 130 feet

**Note:** A continuous guideline to open water must be maintained on all cave dives

**Note:** A reckless or cavalier attitude may constitute grounds for denying certification, regardless of technical ability

**Note:** Certifications may be denied if it is determined the course was not conducted according to the standards established by TDI.

**In order to complete the course the student must:**

1. Complete all land drills and cave dive requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature and sound judgment, concerning dive planning and execution
3. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cave environment
4. Log all dives
5. Receive the recommendation for certification by the instructor

## **21.11 Instructor Requirements**

**To qualify to teach the TDI Cave Survey Diver Course, the instructor must:**

1. Be an active TDI Full Cave Diving Instructor for at least 1 year
2. Have taught at least 5 complete cave diver courses
3. Provide proof of at least 25 logged survey dives
4. Co-taught at least 1 TDI Underwater Cave Survey Diver Course with and active TDI Underwater Cave Survey Diver Instructor
5. Published or be a key member of at least 1 cave survey project

## 22. DPV Cave Diver

### 22.1 Introduction

This course is designed to teach trained cave divers how to utilize Diver Propulsion Vehicles (DPVs) in the cave environment. Divers will learn about safe DPV use, DPV components, and care and maintenance. Students will learn to plan dives that may incorporate extended penetration, longer bottom times, complex dive planning, and proper methods of gas management.

### 22.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in DPV cave diving activities without direct supervision so long as the following limits are adhered to:

1. If each diver utilizes a single DPV, each diver must turn the dive with no less than twice the amount of gas required to exit the cave while swimming
2. If each diver utilizes multiple DPVs, each diver must turn the dive with no less than twice the amount of gas required to exit the cave while utilizing the DPV
3. No equipment removal in cave with exception of stage bottles if utilized
4. 39 metres /130 feet maximum depth
5. Students are encouraged to gain experience before attempting to plan and execute complex DPV cave dives
6. Safety and decompression stops are completed as appropriate or necessary

### 22.3 Who May Teach

An active TDI DPV Cave Instructor.

### 22.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. NA

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 2 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate.

## 22.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Certified as a TDI Full Cave Diver or equivalent
3. Provide proof of at least 25 non-training full cave dives

## 22.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. Students must complete 3 cave DPV dives with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 90 minutes.

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 4

## 22.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 22.8 Required Equipment

**The following material is required:**

1. NA

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Dual cylinders, volume appropriate for planned dive, student gas consumption
2. Two independent first and second stage regulators; one regulator equipped with a long hose
3. Submersible pressure gauge
4. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
5. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
6. Mask and fins, NO snorkel
7. Two line cutting devices
8. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a burn time suitable for the planned dive time
9. One primary cave-diving reel with length appropriate for intended dive
10. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
11. Appropriate number of gap and jump reels with 15 metres / 50 feet of guideline
12. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
13. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
14. Submersible dive tables or back up dive computer
15. Three directional line arrows
16. One non-directional line marker
17. DPV adequately configured for the cave environment

**Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises**

## 22.9 Required Subject Areas

The following topics must be covered during this course:

1. Motivations for DPV cave diving
2. Advantages of DPV use
3. Equipment considerations
  - a. DPV options
  - b. DPV components
  - c. Rated burn time
  - d. Care and Maintenance
  - e. DPV rigging
  - f. Helmets
4. Problem solving procedures
  - a. DPV malfunction or failure
  - b. Towing
  - c. Gas sharing with DPVs
  - d. Light failure
  - e. Entanglement
  - f. Collision avoidance
  - g. Team separation
5. Environmental considerations
  - a. Appropriate vs. inappropriate passages
  - b. Suitable cave conditions
  - c. Low impact DPV use
6. DPV diving techniques
  - a. Buoyancy and trim with DPV
  - b. Dropping, securing, and retrieving a DPV
  - c. Installing guidelines with a DPV
  - d. Instigating directional and depth changes
  - e. DPV courtesy and etiquette
7. Dive planning and gas management
  - a. Turn time, turn distance, and turn pressure
  - b. Gas mix(es) and NDLs or decompression obligations

## **22.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
2. Equipment check and equipment matching
3. Bubble check
4. Demonstrate specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
5. Demonstrate proper buoyancy control
6. Demonstrate proper body posture
7. Demonstrate proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during cave dives:**

1. Share gas with DPVs while maintaining visual contact with the guideline.
2. Simulate primary light failure and exit utilizing the DPV and the smallest backup light
3. Simulate exiting the cave with disabled DPV
4. Exit while towing a team member and his disabled DPV

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Perform all dive requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cavern environment
4. Log all dives

## 23. Stage Cave Diver

### 23.1 Introduction

This course is designed to teach trained cave divers how to extend bottom times and/or penetration distance through the use of stage cylinders. Divers will learn to plan dives that may incorporate longer bottom times, complex dive planning, and multiple methods of gas management. With respect to depth, gas mixes, and required decompression, course dives will not exceed the student's current level of certification and experience level.

### 23.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in stage cave diving activities without direct supervision so long as the following limits are adhered to:

1. Penetration is limited to the 1/3 air rule, or more conservative air-plan at instructor's discretion.
2. No equipment removal in cave with exception of stage cylinders.
3. Students are encouraged to gain experience before attempting to plan and execute complex stage cave dives.
4. Safety and decompression stops are completed as appropriate or necessary.

### 23.3 Who May Teach

An active TDI Stage Cave Instructor.

### 23.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to insure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter.

#### Confined Water (Swimming pool-like conditions)

1. NA

#### Open Water (Ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 3 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate.

## 23.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Certified as a TDI Full Cave Diver or equivalent

## 23.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water execution

1. Students must complete 3 stage cave dives with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 90 minutes utilizing two different cave entrances.

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 4

## 23.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website



## **23.8 Required Equipment**

**The following material is required:**

1. NA

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Dual cylinders, volume appropriate for planned dive, student gas consumption
2. Two independent first and second stage regulators; one regulator equipped with a long hose
3. Submersible pressure gauge
4. Stage cylinder(s), volume appropriate for planned dive, student gas consumption
5. Stage regulator(s) including first and second stage and submersible pressure gauge
6. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
7. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
8. Mask and fins, NO snorkel
9. Two line cutting devices
10. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
11. One primary cave-diving reel with length appropriate for intended dive
12. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
13. Appropriate number of gap and jump reels with 15 metres / 50 feet of guideline
14. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
15. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
16. Submersible dive tables or back up dive computer
17. Three directional line arrows
18. One non-directional line marker

**Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises**

## **23.9 Required Subject Areas**

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Motivations for extended time and penetration
2. Equipment considerations
  - a. Cylinder sizes
  - b. Rigging
  - c. Streamlining
3. Gas planning and gas management techniques
4. Dive planning including decompression obligations
5. Stage Diving techniques suitable for the cave environment
  - a. Dropping and retrieving of stage cylinders
  - b. Drop-off stations

## **23.10 Required Skill Performance And Graduation Requirements**

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
2. Equipment check and equipment matching
3. Bubble check
4. Demonstrate specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
5. Demonstrate proper buoyancy control
6. Demonstrate proper body posture
7. Demonstrate proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during cave dives:**

1. Demonstrate proper use of stage cylinders.
2. Dropping and retrieval of stage cylinders efficiently while swimming.

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Perform all dive requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cavern environment
4. Log all dives

## **23.11 Instructor Requirements**

**To qualify to teach the TDI Stage Cave Diver Course, the instructor must:**

1. Be an active TDI Full Cave Diving Instructor for at least 1 year
2. Have taught at least 5 complete cave diver courses
3. Provide proof of at least 25 logged stage penetration dives
4. Co-taught at least 1 TDI Stage Cave Diver Course with an active TDI Stage Cave Diver Instructor

## 24. Mine Diver Level I

### 24.1 Introduction

This course is the first stage in the TDI Mine Diver development program and is an introduction to the basic principles of mine diving utilizing a single primary guide line. This introduction is not intended to train divers for all facets of mine diving. The objective of this course is the perfection of skills taught in the TDI Cavern Diving program, in addition to the adoption of additional techniques and procedures required for elementary mine dives. This course may be combined with TDI Mine Diver Level II at the discretion of the instructor.

This course uses the same principles and techniques as the TDI Intro to Cave course, including utilizing the same training materials and equipment. However, dual certification is not permitted and graduates wishing to dive in caves must complete the TDI Intro to Cave course.

### 24.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in single guideline Mine diving activities without direct supervision, provided the graduates adhere to the following limits:

1. Penetration is limited to 1/3 of a single diving cylinder, or 1/6th if using double cylinders
2. 40 metres / 130 feet maximum depth
3. No decompression diving
4. Maintain a continuous guideline
5. Proper mine diving equipment is used
6. Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:
  - a. TDI Mine Diver Level II course

### 24.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Mine Diving Instructor specifically authorized by the HQ Training Department. Minimum criteria to be considered for authorization are: TDI Full Cave Instructor with a verifiable minimum of 30 mine dives OR complete a Mine Diver Level 1 Instructor course with an active status TDI Mine Diver IT. Prerequisites for the Mine Diver Level 1 instructor course include certification as a Mine Diver Level 2, certification as a TDI Nitrox instructor or higher, proof of 150 logged mine dives, have taught a minimum of 4 TDI courses, and have assisted with at least one TDI Mine Diver Level 1 course.

## **24.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

### **Mine Dives**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

## **24.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Certified TDI Cavern Diver or equivalent OR Open Water Scuba Diver with 25 logged dives. If students are not cavern certified, 2 additional dives must be added to the course, with all skills from the Mine Diver Level 1 course to be performed during those two dives in the natural or artificial daylight zone of the mine prior to conducting any further dives beyond the light zone. Diver must demonstrate buoyancy control, trim and proper propulsion technique before progressing beyond the light zone.
3. Divers must have SDI Deep Diver certification (or equivalent) or provide proof of experience to dive deeper than 18 metres/60 feet in this course.

## **24.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Water Execution**

1. Minimum of 4 single guideline mine dives with a total bottom time of 100 minutes conducted at 2 different sites (different water entry points in the same mine system may be considered a different site for Mine Diver Level I training if they are at least 50 metres / 165 feet apart)
2. If the student is already certified as a TDI Intro to Cave or Full Cave Diver, a maximum of 2 dives may be credited towards Mine Diver Level I training at the discretion of the instructor
3. If combined with Mine Diver Level II, a total of 12 dives with a total minimum bottom time of 340 minutes must be conducted over a minimum of 6 days.

**Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

**Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 4  
Course must be taught over 2 days

**24.7 Administrative Requirements****The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

**24.8 Training Material****Required Material**

1. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments Manual*
2. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments Instructor Guide*
3. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments Instructor Resource CD* (Optional)

**Optional Material**

1. *NACD Art of Safe Cave Diving*
2. *Basic Cave Diving – A Blueprint for Survival*
3. *CDAA - Cavern / Sinkhole Manual*
4. *NSS-CDS Cave Diving Manual*
5. *The Darkness Beckons – Martyn Farr*
6. *Cavern Measureless to Man*

## 24.9 Required Equipment

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. Primary cylinder(s); volume appropriate for planned dive and student gas consumption
2. Dual-orifice (Y) or (H) closed valve or dual valve manifold
3. Two independent first and second stage regulators; one regulator equipped with a long hose
4. Submersible pressure gauge
5. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
6. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
7. Mask and fins, NO snorkel
8. Line cutting device
9. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
10. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
11. One primary cave-diving reel with length appropriate for intended dive
12. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
13. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
14. Submersible dive tables or backup dive computer
15. Three directional line arrows

**Required equipment is the same as TDI Intro to Cave diver. Instructor must use equipment required for TDI Full Cave diving during all water exercises**

## 24.10 Required Subject Areas

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Policy for Mine/Cave Diving
2. Gas Matching Procedures and Management to Include Dissimilar Volumes
3. Psychological Considerations
4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Regulator options
  - c. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) / harness options
  - d. Reel options
  - e. Proper weighting
  - f. Equipment configurations

5. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signals
6. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques
7. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
8. Mine Environment
  - a. Types of mines
  - b. Geology
    - i. Bottom
    - ii. Ceiling
  - c. Structure
  - d. Hazards
  - e. Local access requirements
  - f. Land owner relations
9. Conservation
10. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions
11. Accident Analysis
12. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
13. Mine /Cave Diving Etiquette

## **24.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**As much of the following information as possible must be determined/obtained and utilized in dive planning:**

1. What material(s) were extracted from the mine and by what method(s)
2. Were toxic solutions or substances used or created during the extraction process and is there a risk of such substance(s) remaining or of any general pollution. If so, ascertain which location(s)
3. Obtain a detailed map of the mine from the mining company or whoever is responsible for the site

4. Are there any known or potentially collapsible tunnels?
5. All known access and egress points from the mine, their depths and possible emergency traverses to other exits
6. Type(s) of sediment in the mine
7. Type of ceiling supports; ie wooden or metal and how to detect signs of wear, type of debris left in the mine
8. All possible entanglement points
9. Location, size and depth of vertical extraction shafts
10. Points that could damage divers' delicate equipment such as lines, dry suits, etc
11. Line options
12. How to evaluate the stability of a passage
13. Existing collapse points
14. Special equipment requirements
15. Type of entry/exit

**Land Drills**

1. How to properly:
  - a. Deploy a guideline
  - b. follow a guideline
2. Use of safety reel in:
  - a. Lost diver procedures
  - b. Lost line drill

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate:
  - a. Adequate pre-dive planning
  - b. Equipment check and equipment matching
  - c. Bubble check
  - d. Specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
  - e. Proper buoyancy control
  - f. Proper body posture
  - g. Proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**In-water skills**

1. Properly deploy a guideline
2. Properly use line markers
3. Properly follow a guideline with eyes open and closed, simulating loss of visibility
4. Air share with a buddy with eyes open, following the guideline
5. Air share with a buddy with lights off, eyes closed and use touch contact, following the guideline



6. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
7. Demonstrate light / hand -signals and touch contact
8. Conservation and awareness techniques
9. Referencing as back-up navigation
10. Demonstrate adequate anti-silting techniques
11. Simulate a primary light failure, and use back light to exit the mine
12. Demonstrate lost line and lost diver drills
13. Identify and avoid potential hazard, entanglement and collapse points

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Intro Cave Diver Course written examination (*this requirement may be waived by the instructor if the student is already TDI Intro to Cave certified*)
2. Perform all land drills and mine dive requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the mine environment
5. Log all dives

### 24.12 Permission to Dive

Before conducting training in any man-made environment, permission must be obtained from whoever is responsible for the site; for example the mine owner/operator, government department, etc. Additionally, the relevant local emergency services should be informed of the activity prior to commencement.

## 25. Mine Diver Level II

### 25.1 Introduction

This course is the second stage of training in the TDI Mine Diver development program. This course is not intended to prepare divers for evaluating all facets of mine diving. The objective of this course is to expand and critique previous skills accomplished in the TDI Cavern and Mine Diver Level I programs. Emphasis is placed upon dive planning and skill perfection through actual mine penetration. This course may be combined with TDI Mine Diver Level I at the discretion of the instructor.

This course uses the same principles and techniques as the TDI Full Cave course, including utilizing the same training materials and equipment. However, dual certification is not permitted and graduates wishing to dive in caves must complete the TDI Full Cave course.

### 25.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in mine diving activities without direct supervision provided the graduates adhere to the following limits:

1. Penetration is limited to the 1/3 air rule
2. 40 metres / 130 feet maximum depth
3. No equipment removal in mine
4. Safety and decompression stops appropriate or necessary, within the current qualification of student(s) and instructor(s)
5. Maintain a continuous guideline
6. Proper mine diving equipment is used

### 25.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Mine Diving Instructor specifically authorized by the HQ Training Department. Minimum criteria to be considered for authorization are TDI Full Cave Instructor with a verifiable minimum of 30 mine dives OR complete a Mine Diver Level 2 Instructor course with an active status TDI Mine Diver IT. Prerequisites for the Mine Diver Level 2 instructor course include certification as a TDI Mine Diver Level 1 instructor, proof of 200 logged mine dives, have taught a minimum of 3 TDI Mine Diver Level 1 courses, and have assisted with at least one TDI Mine Diver Level 2 course.

## **25.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

### **Cave Dives**

1. A maximum of 3 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

## **25.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Certified TDI Mine Diver Level I, or equivalent

## **25.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Open Water Execution**

1. 8 mine dives are required with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 240 minutes at 3 different sites (different water entry points in the same mine system may be considered a different site for Mine Diver Level II training if they are at least 100 metres / 330 feet apart)
2. At least 1 of these sites should be a location not utilized in training during the student's Mine Diver Level I course
3. If the student is already certified as a TDI Mine Diver Level I or TDI Full Cave Diver, a maximum of 2 dives may be credited towards Mine Diver Level II training at the discretion of the instructor
4. If combined with Mine Diver Level I, a total of 12 dives with a total minimum bottom time of 340 minutes must be conducted over a minimum of 6 days

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration**

1. The suggested number of classroom and briefing hours is 6
2. Course must be taught in no less than 4 days

## 25.7 Administrative Requirements

The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment and certifications
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration* Form to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 25.8 Training Material

### Required Material

1. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Manual
2. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Instructor Guide
3. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Instructor Resource CD (Optional)

### Optional Material

1. *NACD Art of Safe Cave Diving*
2. *Basic Cave Diving – A Blueprint for Survival*
3. *CDAA - Cavern / Sinkhole* Manual
4. *NSS – CDS Cave Diving* Manual
5. *Cavern Measureless to Man*
6. *The Darkness Beckons – Martyn Farr*

## 25.9 Required Equipment

The following equipment is required for each student:

1. Dual cylinders, volume appropriate for planned dive, student gas consumption
2. Two independent first and second stage regulators; one regulator equipped with a long hose
3. Submersible pressure gauge
4. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
5. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
6. Mask and fins, NO snorkel

7. Two line cutting devices
8. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
9. One primary cave-diving reel with length appropriate for intended dive
10. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
11. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
12. Submersible dive tables or back up dive computer
13. Three directional line arrows
14. One non- directional line marker
15. Gap reel with 15 metres / 50 feet of guideline
16. It is recommended that the team properly mark decompression cylinders and stage them, in any dive where decompression is planned, at least 1 stop deeper than the planned decompression obligation

**Required equipment is the same as TDI Full Cave diver. Instructor must use equipment required for TDI Full Cave diving during all water exercises**

## **25.10 Required Subject Areas**

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Policy for Mine/Cave Diving
2. Gas Matching Procedures and Management to Include Dissimilar Volumes
3. Psychological Considerations
4. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Cylinder options
  - b. Regulator options
  - c. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) / harness options
  - d. Reel options
  - e. Proper weighting
  - f. Equipment configurations
5. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signal
6. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques

7. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
  - c. Decompression theory and its application to mine diving
8. Mine Environment
  - a. Types of mines
  - b. Geology
    - i. Bottom
    - ii. Ceiling
  - c. Structure
  - d. Hazards
  - e. Local access requirements
  - f. Land owner relations
9. Conservation
10. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions
11. Accident Analysis
12. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
13. Mine/Cave Diving Etiquette

## **25.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**As much of the following information as possible must be determined/obtained and utilized in dive planning:**

1. What material(s) were extracted from the mine and by what method(s)
2. Were toxic solutions or substances used or created during the extraction process and is there a risk of such substance(s) remaining or of any general pollution. If so, ascertain which location(s)
3. Obtain a detailed map of the mine from the mining company or whoever is responsible for the site
4. Are there any known or potentially collapsible tunnels?
5. All known access and egress points from the mine, their depths and possible emergency traverses to other exits
6. Type(s) of sediment in the mine
7. Type of ceiling supports; ie wooden or metal and how to detect signs of wear, type of debris left in the mine
8. All possible entanglement points

9. Location, size and depth of vertical extraction shafts
10. Points that could damage divers' delicate equipment such as lines, dry suits, etc
11. Line options
12. How to evaluate the stability of a passage
13. Existing collapse points
14. Special equipment requirements
15. Type of entry/exit

**Land Drills**

1. How to properly deploy a guideline
2. How to properly follow a guideline
3. Use of safety reel in lost diver procedures
4. Use of safety reel in lost line drill

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
2. Equipment check and equipment matching
3. Bubble check
4. Demonstrate specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
5. Demonstrate proper buoyancy control
6. Demonstrate proper body posture
7. Demonstrate proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**In-water skills**

1. Properly deploy a guideline
2. Properly use directional and non directional line markers
3. Properly follow a guideline with eyes open and closed (simulating loss of visibility)
4. Air share with a buddy with eyes open , following the guideline
5. Air share with a buddy with lights off and eyes closed and use touch contact, following the guideline
6. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
7. Demonstrate light / hand -signals and touch contact
8. Conservation and awareness techniques
9. Referencing as back-up navigation
10. Demonstrate adequate anti-silting techniques
11. Simulate a primary light failure, and use back light to exit the cave
12. Demonstrate lost line and lost diver drills
13. Demonstrate to use of reels to perform jumps and gaps required in circuits and traverses to maintain a continuous guideline to open water
14. Identify and avoid potential hazard, entanglement and collapse points

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Cave Diver Course written examination (*this requirement may be waived by the instructor if the student is already TDI Full Cave certified*)
2. Perform all land drills and mine dive requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the mine environment
5. Log all dives

### **25.12 Permission to Dive**

Before conducting training in any man-made environment, permission must be obtained from whoever is responsible for the site; for example the mine owner/operator, government department, etc. Additionally, the relevant local emergency services should be informed of the activity prior to commencement.



## 26. Rebreather Discovery Program

### 26.1 Introduction

This program is designed to give prospective students an introduction to diving a TDI approved rebreather in a controlled environment under the direct supervision of an active TDI Rebreather Instructor.

### 26.2 Qualifications of graduates

This is not a qualification program. Upon successful completion of this program, a certificate may be issued stating that the diver has participated in a rebreather experience.

### 26.3 Who may teach

An active TDI Rebreather Instructor on the unit specific to the conducted program

### 26.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of the subject matter

#### Pool

1. A maximum of 2 students per instructor

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. A maximum of 2 per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 1 student per instructor

### 26.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of 10 logged open water dives to participate in the pool / confined water session of the program
3. Provide proof of 25 logged open water dives to participate in the open water session of the program
4. TDI Nitrox Diver or equivalent

## **26.6 Program Structure and Duration**

### **Pool/Confined Water Execution**

1. Confined water skills must be completed in water shallow enough to stand up in
2. Minimum of 30 minutes confined water training to a maximum depth of 6 metres / 20 feet if proceeding to the open water portion of the program
3. All confined water sessions must be completed during daylight hours or under conditions that simulate daylight conditions
4. Maximum pool / confined and open water dive time must be completed well within the manufacturer scrubber duration recommendation
5. Instructors are not allowed to carry any photo or video equipment while conducting confined dives (hands free systems are acceptable as long as they require zero input from the instructor during the dive)
6. Instructors must remain close enough to program attendees to lend immediate assistance throughout the entire experience
7. Rebreather should be disinfected based on the manufacturers recommendations as appropriate between users

### **Open Water Execution**

1. An optional open water session to a maximum depth of 9 metres / 30 feet may be conducted
2. Maximum pool / confined and open water dive time must be completed well within the manufacturer scrubber duration recommendation
3. All open water sessions must be completed during daylight hours or under conditions that simulate daylight conditions
4. Instructors are not allowed to carry any photo or video equipment while conducting open water dives (hands free systems are acceptable as long as they require zero input from the instructor during the dive)
5. The open water execution may be repeated within one week of the original program at the instructor's discretion. A dive briefing will replace the academic development. In this instance, key safety drills from the pool / confined water portion must be repeated before each open water dive in water shallow enough to stand up in
6. Instructors must remain close enough to the program attendee to lend immediate assistance throughout the entire experience.

### **Program Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure programs according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration**

1. The suggested number of training hours is 2

## 26.7 Administrative requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the program fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete prior to training:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the experience program, the Instructor can:

1. At the Instructor's discretion, issue a certificate stating that the diver has participated in a discover rebreather diving experience. This certificate should be produced by the instructor and should indicate this certificate is not a certification to dive a rebreather

## 26.8 Required equipment

### The following equipment is required for each student:

1. A complete TDI approved rebreather completely assembled by an active TDI Rebreather Instructor who holds the rating for the specific unit the student is diving
2. Rebreather build list required by the manufacturer
3. Minimum of 1 CCR dive computer or PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring device
4. Mask and fins
5. Exposure suit appropriate for the environment where training will be conducted
6. Appropriate weight
7. Access to an oxygen analyzer
8. Bailout gas supply (may be the on-board diluent supply)

**Note:** The Instructor must carry a bailout gas supply for the students. This redundant air source must be greater than the Instructor rebreather requirement if diving a rebreather. The instructor may choose to be on a TDI approved rebreather they hold instructor ratings for or opt to be on open circuit.

## 26.9 Required subject areas

Instructors may use additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during the program:

1. Brief Introduction on the History and Evolution of Rebreathers
2. Practical Mechanics of the System
  - a. Counter lungs purpose
  - b. Scrubber material purpose
  - c. Oxygen cylinder
  - d. Diluent cylinder
  - e. Mouthpiece
  - f. Harness and BCD
3. Breathing Gas
  - a. Reintroduce the concept of nitrox and its advantages
  - b. Introduce the  $PO_2$  concept and Daltons Law
  - c. Introduce the  $PO_2$  set points on the rebreather
  - d. Oxygen fuel cells, redundancy and voting logic
4. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen limitations
  - b. Nitrogen limitations
  - c.  $CO_2$  limitations, scrubber duration
  - d. Gas consumption / limitations
5. Middle ear oxygen absorption syndrome - Equalization necessary after diving
6. Systems Electronics Functionality and Calibration Procedures.  
Calibration Procedure to be Performed by the Active TDI Rebreather Instructor
7.  $PO_2$  Monitoring
8. Emergency Procedures
  - a. Bailing out
  - b. Proper weighting / weight check
  - c. Descent procedures
    - i. Gas additions as appropriate:
      1. Counter lungs
      2. BCD

- d. Ascent procedures
  - i. Venting gas as appropriate:
    - 1. Counter lungs
    - 2. BCD
- e. Explain manual addition and automatic diluent valve addition
- f. Alarms
- g. Three H's: Hypoxia, Hyperoxia, Hypercapnia
- h. Flooded loop

## **26.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**Students are required to successfully complete the following skills in the pool / confined and open water within the following program limits:**

1. All dives to be completed within CNS% limits with a recommended maximum of 80% of the total PO<sub>2</sub> CNS limit.
2. PO<sub>2</sub> not to exceed manufacturer recommendation or 1.3. Minimum PO<sub>2</sub> set point of .7
3. Where an automatic diluent valve (ADV) is fitted by the manufacturer, additional skills such as regular gauge and electronics monitoring and manual control must be emphasized
4. Descent and ascent must be done following a gradual increase such as a beach access with gentle slope or using a descent line/reference to the bottom and surface

### **Pool / Confined Water Skills:**

1. Pre dive checks
2. Leak checks
3. Demonstrate understanding of monitoring PO<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> Sensor (if applicable)
4. Demonstrate understanding of monitoring pressure gauges
5. Demonstrate mouthpiece familiarity; being able to close the mouthpiece properly and bail out to open circuit
6. Descent procedures: adding gas to BCD and counter lungs as appropriate
7. Adding diluent manually (if applicable)
8. Understanding the ADV
9. Swimming and maintaining buoyancy
10. What to do in case of light gurgling
11. Maintaining adequate loop volume
12. Alarms = immediate bailout
13. Ascending in the water while venting air spaces: lungs, counter lungs, BCD

### **Open Water Skills:**

1. PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring
2. Monitoring pressure gauges
3. Maintaining buoyancy
4. Maintaining adequate loop volume

### **In order to complete the rebreather discovery program the student must:**

1. Complete, to the instructors satisfaction, all confined and open water skill development sessions
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution

### **The following articles and books are recommended reading and allow wider understanding.**

1. Richard Pyle - *A Learners Guide to Closed Circuit Rebreather Operations*
2. Kenneth Donald - *Oxygen & the Diver*
3. John Lamb - *Oxygen Measurement for Divers*
4. Barsky, Thurlow & Ward - *The Simple Guide to Rebreather Diving*
5. Bob Cole - *Rebreather Diving*
6. Jeffrey Bozanic - *Mastering Rebreathers*

## **27. Semi-Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver, Unit Specific- DOLPHIN, RAY, Atlantis, SUBMATIX ST100 & AZIMUTH**

### **27.1 Introduction**

This is the entry-level certification course for recreational divers wishing to utilize one of the following semi-closed circuit rebreathers: Dolphin, Ray, Submatix ST100 or Azimuth. The objective of this course is to train recreational divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures for using SCR rebreathers.

### **27.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in no decompression diving activities utilizing the Dolphin, Ray, Submatix ST100 or Azimuth to a maximum depth of 40 metres / 130 feet, without decompression; utilizing nitrox mixes not exceeding their level of certification.

### **27.3 Who May Teach**

Any active TDI Rebreather Instructor may teach this course. Specific instructor certification required for each specific rebreather.

### **27.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

#### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 6 students per instructor for the Draeger units, maximum of 4 students per instructor for the Azimuth and Submatix units; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

## 27.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18, 15 with parental consent
2. Minimum certification of TDI Nitrox Diver, may be combined in program, or equivalent at the discretion of the instructor

## 27.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Open Water Execution

1. A minimum of 4 dives with a minimum of 100 accumulated minutes for the Drager units
2. A minimum of 5 dives with a minimum of 125 accumulated minutes for the Submatix ST100
3. A minimum of 6 dives with a minimum of 150 accumulated minutes for the Azimuth

### Course Structure

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### Duration

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6

## 27.7 Administrative Requirements

### The following are the administrative tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website



## 27.8 Training Material

### Required material

1. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual or eLearning
2. Specific manufacturer manual for the rebreather being dived

### Optional Material

1. TDI plastic EAD and PO<sub>2</sub> tables
2. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* PowerPoint Presentation
3. Nitrox and rebreather equations software

## 27.9 Required Equipment

### The following equipment is required for each student:

1. Rebreather specific to the training being conducted
2. Integrated PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring device for inhaled PO<sub>2</sub> for each rebreather  
(See item 17.13 if unit is equipped)
3. Mask and fins
4. Exposure suit appropriate for the open water environment
5. Access to oxygen analyzer, instructor may supply
6. Weight / weight system
7. Bailout cylinder, minimum size 1.9 litres / 13 cubic feet
8. Flow meter, instructor may supply

## 27.10 Required Subject Areas

The *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual and the manufacturer's manual are mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:

1. History and Evolution of Rebreathers
2. Comparison of Open Circuit, Closed Circuit, and Semi-closed Circuit
3. Practical Mechanics of the System
  - a. Assembly and disassembly of the rebreather
  - b. Layout and design
  - c. Scrubber recharge
  - d. System maintenance
  - e. Breathing loop decontamination procedures
4. Review of Nitrox
  - a. Dalton's Law (triangle)
  - b. Optimum nitrox mix
  - c. Oxygen tracking
  - d. Gas preparation
  - e. Dive planning examples

5. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
  - b. Hyperoxia
  - c. Hypoxia
  - d. Asphyxia
  - e. Hypercapnia
  - f. Nitrogen absorption
  - g. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
  - h. Gas consumption
    - i. Cylinder sizes
    - ii. Depth and workload
6. Formula Work / Metabolic Consumption
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) metabolizing calculations
  - b. Inspired oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) calculations (rebreather equation)
  - c. Equivalent air depth (EAD)
7. Dive Tables
  - a. Inspired oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) table
  - b. Equivalent air depth
8. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) integrated
  - c. PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring devices
9. Problem Solving
  - a. Canister flooding
  - b. Mouthpiece loss
  - c. Scrubber exhaustion
  - d. Battery or sensor loss
  - e. Breathing bag rupture
  - f. Open circuit bailout system
    - i. On board gas
    - ii. Off board gas
  - g. Hyperoxia scenario
  - h. Hypoxia scenario
  - i. Hypercapnia scenario
  - j. Post problem maintenance of equipment
10. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
    - i. Gas requirements
    - ii. Oxygen limitations
    - iii. Nitrogen limitations

## 27.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements

**The dive depth shall not exceed 1.6 ATM PO<sub>2</sub>. The following skills must be completed by the student during open water dives:**

1. Properly analyze gas mixture
2. Perform all pre dive checks, positive, negative, flow rate, by-pass regulator operation, relief valve pressure, a minimum of 6 times
3. Demonstrate a leak check and repair scenario
4. Demonstration of integrity of exhale counter-lung for Submatix ST100
5. Properly packing a scrubber canister a minimum of 2 times; if using the ExtendAir cartridge one packing must be with granular material
6. Properly execute set-up and breakdown; a minimum of 6 times for Azimuth or 4 times for Draeger and Submatix ST100 rebreathers
7. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on system performance
  - b. Limits based upon oxygen exposures at planned depth with mix
  - c. Limits based upon nitrogen absorption at planned depth with mix
8. Properly execute the planned dives within all pre-determined limits
9. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and switch to bail-out stationary a minimum of 2 times
10. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and switch to bail-out hovering a minimum of 2 times, one of the bail-out scenarios the diver must switch to open circuit and complete dive and safety stop on open circuit; direct ascent must begin when diver switches to open circuit, this scenario should be conducted no deeper than 20 metres / 60 feet
11. Properly demonstrate hose clearing technique after each bail-out scenario
12. Perform block switch a minimum of 2 times, Azimuth only
13. Proper PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring on all dives, if unit is equipped with PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring device
14. Properly execute a mask clearing exercise with emphasis on minimal gas loss
15. Safely and properly execute a buddy out of air scenario, it is preferable the buddy is on a SCR unit also
16. Diver will demonstrate actual safety stops at pre-determined depths
17. Properly execute cleaning and maintenance of the rebreather, including breathing loop decontamination

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Diving Rebreathers Course written examination
2. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution

## 28. KISS GEM Level 1 Diver

### 28.1 Introduction

This is the entry-level certification course for recreational divers wishing to utilize the GEM semi-closed circuit rebreather in recreational diving. The objective of this course is to instruct divers in the procedures, benefits and hazards of semi-closed circuit diving using the GEM.

### 28.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course graduates may engage in no-decompression diving utilizing the GEM semi-closed circuit rebreather with a nitrox mix of between 32% and 40% to a maximum depth of 30 metres / 100 feet with a  $PO_2$  not to exceed 1.4 ATA based on cylinder contents.

### 28.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI KISS GEM Level 1 Instructor may teach this course

### 28.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic:

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

### 28.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age of 18
2. Provide proof of:
  - a. SDI Nitrox Diver or equivalent at the discretion of the instructor
  - b. SDI Advanced Diver or equivalent at the discretion of the instructor

## **28.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Confined Water Execution**

1. A minimum of 1 confined water dive with a minimum of 60 minutes of accumulated bottom time

### **Open Water Execution:**

1. A minimum of 5 dives with a minimum of 200 accumulated minutes; two dives must be deeper than 15 metres/50 feet

### **Course Structure:**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

### **Duration:**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6; minimum course duration 3 days.

### **Crossovers:**

For divers that have already received training on a TDI approved SCR, they must meet all GEM standards with the exception of the following:

1. Minimum of 3 open water dives for a minimum accumulated bottom time of 120 minutes. The 60 minutes of confined water time is still required

## **28.7 Administrative Requirements**

### **Administrative Tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### **Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 28.8 Training Material

### Required material

1. KISS GEM owner's manual
2. *TDI KISS GEM* PowerPoint Slides

### Optional Material

1. TDI plastic EAD and PO<sub>2</sub> tables

## 28.9 Required Equipment

The following equipment is required for each student:

1. A complete GEM rebreather
2. Printed checklists from the GEM owner's manual
3. GEM rebreather owner's manual
4. A minimum of 1 integrated PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring for each GEM
5. Access to oxygen analyzer (instructor may supply)
6. Adequate CO<sub>2</sub> absorbent (ExtendAir™ cartridge or equivalent ) for the dives to be conducted
7. Underwater slate
8. Depth gauge and automatic bottom timer AND/OR nitrox dive computer
9. Mask and fins
10. Exposure suit appropriate for the open water environment
11. Appropriate weight
12. Toolkit with appropriate spares (instructor may supply)
13. Disinfectant (instructor may supply)
14. One line cutting device

## 28.10 Required Subject Areas

The KISS GEM Owner's Manual and KISS GEM PowerPoint Slides are mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:

1. History and Evolution of Rebreathers
2. Comparison of Open Circuit, Closed Circuit, and Semi-closed Circuit
3. Practical Mechanics of the GEM Rebreather System
  - a. Assembly and disassembly of the GEM rebreather
  - b. Layout and design
  - c. Scrubber replacement
  - d. Pre-dive safety check sequence
  - e. System maintenance and storage
  - f. Breathing loop decontamination procedures
4. Review of Nitrox
  - a. Dalton's Law (triangle)
  - b. Optimum nitrox mix
  - c. Oxygen tracking
  - d. Gas preparation and analysis
5. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen toxicity
  - b. Hyperoxia
  - c. Hypoxia
  - d. Asphyxia
  - e. Hypercapnia
  - f. Nitrogen absorption
  - g. CO<sub>2</sub> toxicity
  - h. Gas consumption
    - i. Cylinder sizes
    - ii. Depth and workload
6. Formula work / metabolic consumption
  - a. Cylinder size/duration equation
  - b. Equivalent air depth
7. Dive Tables
  - a. Inspired O<sub>2</sub> table
  - b. Equivalent air depth.
8. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. O<sub>2</sub> integrated
  - c. PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring devices

9. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
  - b. Gas requirements including bailout scenarios
  - c. Oxygen limitations
  - d. Nitrogen limitations
10. Problem Solving
  - a. Canister flooding
  - b. Mouthpiece loss
  - c. Scrubber exhaustion
  - d. Battery or sensor failure
  - e. Breathing bag rupture
  - f. Open circuit bailout
  - g. Hyperoxia scenario
  - h. Hypoxia scenario
  - i. Hypercapnia scenario
  - j. Post problem maintenance of equipment

## **28.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The dive depth shall not exceed one point four (1.4 ATM) PO<sub>2</sub>. The following skills must be completed by the student during open water dives:**

### **Confined Water Skills:**

1. Complete GEM Pre-dive Checklist
2. Pre-dive checks (minimum 1 time)
  - a. Scrubber packing
  - b. Unit assembly
  - c. One-way valve check
  - d. Positive and negative pressure tests
3. Properly analyze supply cylinder
4. Proper fitting and adjustment of counter lung system
5. Correct starting orientation of mouth piece
6. Perform in water bubble check
7. Perform 1 stationary bail-out
8. Perform 1 bail-out ascent from a depth not shallower than 1.5 metres/5 feet
9. Perform a complete unit disassembly and cleaning

**Note:** All pool dives must be conducted with a minimum of 40% (+/- 1%) oxygen in the source cylinder



**Open Water Skills:**

1. Properly analyze gas mixture
2. Perform pre-dive check sequence with use of manufacturer's checklist a minimum of 5 times
3. Demonstrate a leak check and repair scenario
4. Properly pack scrubber canister a minimum of 2 times
5. Properly execute set-up and breakdown a minimum of 5 times
6. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning limits based:
  - a. On system performance
  - b. Upon oxygen exposures at planned depth with mix
  - c. Upon nitrogen absorption at planned depth with mix
7. Demonstrate switching to open loop or open circuit when depth is 6 metres/20 feet or shallower
8. Properly execute the planned dives within all pre-determined limits
9. Demonstrate the proper adjustment of the counter-lung system underwater
  - a. Adjustment of straps, including removal and replacement
  - b. Adjustment of the counter-lung bungees if not previously adjusted
10. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and switch to bail-out stationary a minimum of 2 times per dive
11. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and switch to bail-out hovering a minimum of 2 times, one of the bail-out scenarios the diver must switch to open circuit and complete dive and safety stop on open circuit (direct ascent must begin when diver switches to open circuit, this scenario should be conducted no deeper than 18 metres /60 feet
12. Properly demonstrate hose clearing technique after each bail-out scenario
13. Proper PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring on all dives
14. Properly execute a mask clearing exercise with emphasis on minimal gas loss
15. Demonstrate comfort setting up and diving the unit
16. Demonstrate good buoyancy control during the dive
17. Safely and properly execute a buddy out of air scenario, it is preferable the buddy be on an SCR unit also
18. Diver will demonstrate actual safety stops at pre-determined depths
19. Properly execute cleaning and maintenance of the GEM rebreather, including breathing loop decontamination

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Pass the diver final exam with 80% answered correctly and 100% remediation

## 29. KISS GEM Sidekick Diver

### 29.1 Introduction

This is the entry-level certification course for recreational divers wishing to utilize the GEM Sidekick Semi-closed Circuit Rebreather (SCR) in recreational diving. The objective of this course is to instruct divers in the procedures, benefits and hazards of semi-closed circuit diving using the GEM Sidekick.

### 29.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course graduates may engage in no-decompression diving utilizing the GEM Sidekick SCR with a nitrox mix of between 32% and 40% to a maximum depth of 30 metres / 100 feet with a  $PO_2$  not to exceed 1.4 ATA based on cylinder contents.

### 29.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI KISS GEM Sidekick Instructor may teach this course

### 29.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 4 students per instructor; it is the instructor's discretion to reduce this number as conditions dictate

### 29.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of
  - a. SDI Advanced Diver or equivalent at the discretion of the instructor
  - b. SDI or TDI Nitrox Diver or equivalent, may be combined in the program at the discretion of the instructor

## **29.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Confined Water Execution**

1. A minimum of 1 confined water dive with a minimum of 60 minutes of accumulated bottom time

### **Open Water Execution**

1. A minimum of 5 dives with a minimum of 200 accumulated minutes; two dives must be deeper than 15 metres / 50 feet

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level
2. Dives conducted to a maximum depth of 30 metres / 100 feet, not to exceed the maximum depth of the diver's current certification

### **Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6; minimum course duration 3 days
2. A minimum of 2 hours must be spent on equipment overview and maintenance

### **Crossovers**

1. For divers that have already received training on a KISS GEM with dive experience on the GEM within the past 3 months must meet all GEM Sidekick standards with the exception of the following:
  - a. A minimum of 3 hours is required for briefing. This includes going through the PowerPoint specific for the Sidekick, as well as equipment preparation
  - b. Minimum of 2 open water dives for a minimum accumulated bottom time of 80 minutes
2. For divers that have already received training on a TDI approved SCR with dive experience on that SCR within the past 3 months must meet all GEM Sidekick standards with the exception of the following:
  - a. Minimum of 3 open water dives for a minimum accumulated bottom time of 120 minutes. The 60 minutes of confined water time is still required

## 29.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 29.8 Training Material

### Required material

1. *KISS GEM Sidekick* owner's manual
2. *TDI KISS GEM* PowerPoint Slides
3. *TDI KISS GEM Sidekick* PowerPoint Slides

### Optional Material

1. TDI plastic EAD and PO<sub>2</sub> tables

## 29.9 Required Equipment

1. The following equipment is required for each student
  - A complete GEM Sidekick SCR
2. Printed checklists from the GEM Sidekick owner's manual
3. GEM Sidekick SCR owner's manual
4. A minimum of 1 integrated PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring for each GEM Sidekick
5. Access to oxygen analyzer (instructor may supply)
6. Adequate CO<sub>2</sub> absorbent (ExtendAir™ cartridge or equivalent) for the dives to be conducted
7. Underwater slate
8. Depth gauge and automatic bottom timer AND/OR nitrox dive computer
9. Mask and fins
10. Exposure suit appropriate for the open water environment
11. Appropriate weight
12. Tool-kit with appropriate spares (instructor may supply)
13. Disinfectant (instructor may supply)
14. One line cutting device

## 29.10 Required Subject Areas

The KISS GEM Sidekick Owner's Manual and KISS GEM Sidekick PowerPoint Slides are mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during this course:

1. History and Evolution of Rebreathers
2. Comparison of Open Circuit, Closed Circuit, and Semi-closed Circuit
3. Practical Mechanics of the GEM Sidekick SCR System
  - a. Assembly and disassembly of the GEM Sidekick SCR
  - b. Layout and design
  - c. Lung volume control system
  - d. Scrubber replacement
  - e. Pre-dive safety check sequence
  - f. System maintenance and storage
  - g. Breathing loop decontamination procedures
4. Review of Nitrox
  - a. Dalton's Law (triangle)
  - b. Optimum nitrox mix
  - c. Oxygen tracking
  - d. Gas preparation and analysis
5. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen toxicity
  - b. Hyperoxia
  - c. Hypoxia
  - d. Asphyxia
  - e. Hypercapnia
  - f. Nitrogen absorption
  - g. CO<sub>2</sub> toxicity
  - h. Gas consumption
  - i. Cylinder sizes
  - j. Depth and workload
6. Formula work / metabolic consumption
  - a. Cylinder size/duration equation
  - b. Equivalent air depth
7. Dive Tables
  - a. Inspired O<sub>2</sub> table
  - b. Equivalent air depth.
8. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. O<sub>2</sub> integrated
  - c. PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring devices

9. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
  - b. Gas requirements including bailout scenarios
  - c. Oxygen limitations
  - d. Nitrogen limitations
10. Problem Solving
  - a. Canister flooding
  - b. Mouthpiece loss
  - c. Scrubber exhaustion
  - d. Battery or sensor failure
  - e. Breathing bag rupture
  - f. Open circuit bailout
  - g. Hyperoxia scenario
  - h. Hypoxia scenario
  - i. Hypercapnia scenario
  - j. Loop flood recovery
  - k. Supply gas disconnect
  - l. Post problem maintenance of equipment

## **29.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The dive depth shall not exceed one point four (1.4 ATM) PO<sub>2</sub>. The following skills must be completed by the student during confined and open water dives**

### **Confined Water Skills**

1. Complete GEM Sidekick Pre-dive Checklist
2. Pre-dive checks (minimum 1 time)
  - a. Scrubber packing
  - b. Unit assembly
  - c. One-way valve check
  - d. Positive and negative pressure tests
3. Properly analyze supply cylinder
4. Properly calibrate and verify oxygen sensors
5. Proper fitting and adjustment of counter lung system
6. Correct starting orientation of mouthpiece, readjust underwater
7. Perform in water bubble check
8. Demonstrate proper PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring
9. Perform 1 stationary bailout
10. Perform 1 bailout ascent from a depth not shallower than 1.5 metres / 5 feet

11. Lung volume control system adjustment
12. Disconnect and re-connect the gas supply underwater
13. Practice breathing in different positions and note the change in the work of breathing in each position
14. Perform a complete unit disassembly and cleaning

**Note:** All pool dives must be conducted with a minimum of 40% (+/- 1%) oxygen in the source cylinder

### **Open Water Skills**

1. Properly analyze gas mixture
2. Properly calibrate and verify oxygen sensors
3. Perform pre-dive check sequence with use of manufacturer's checklist for each dive
4. Demonstrate a leak check and repair scenario
5. Properly pack scrubber canister a minimum of 2 times
6. Properly execute set-up and breakdown for each dive
7. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning limits based on:
  - a. System performance
  - b. Oxygen exposures at planned depth with mix
  - c. Nitrogen absorption at planned depth with mix
8. Demonstrate switching to open loop or open circuit when depth is 6 metres / 20 feet or shallower
9. Properly execute the planned dives within all pre-determined limits
10. Demonstrate the proper adjustment of the counter-lung system underwater
11. Lung volume control system adjustment
12. Disconnect and re-connect the gas supply underwater
13. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and switch to bailout stationary a minimum of 2 times per dive
14. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and switch to bailout hovering a minimum of 2 times, one of the bailout scenarios the diver must switch to open circuit and complete dive and safety stop on open circuit (direct ascent must begin when diver switches to open circuit, this scenario should be conducted no deeper than 18 metres / 60 feet)
15. Properly demonstrate hose clearing technique after each bailout scenario
16. Proper PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring on all dives
17. Properly execute a mask clearing exercise with emphasis on minimal gas loss
18. Demonstrate comfort setting up and diving the unit
19. Demonstrate good buoyancy control and trim during the dive

20. Safely and properly execute a buddy out of air scenario, it is preferable the buddy be on an SCR unit also
21. Diver will demonstrate actual safety stops at pre-determined depths
22. Properly execute partial loop flood recovery procedures a minimum of 2 times
23. Properly execute gas switching procedures a least 3 times
24. Properly execute cleaning and maintenance of the GEM Sidekick SCR, including breathing loop decontamination

**In order to complete this course, students must**

1. Complete all open water requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Pass the diver final exam with 80% answered correctly and 100% remediation



## 30. Air Diluent Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver, Unit Specific

### 30.1 Introduction

This is the entry level certification course for divers wishing to utilize a closed circuit rebreather (CCR) for air diving. The objective of the course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures for diving a CCR and to develop basic CCR diving skills to a maximum depth of 30 metres / 100 feet, using air as a diluent. No decompression diving is allowed on this course

### 30.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may:

1. Engage in diving activities utilizing the CCR to a maximum depth of 30 metres / 100 feet, utilizing air as a diluent

### 30.3 Who May Teach

1. An active TDI Instructor with a TDI Air Diluent CCR Instructor rating on the specific unit being used

### 30.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor, One additional student may be added if they are doing a refresher or unit crossover.

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor. One additional student may be added if they are doing a refresher or unit crossover.
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

**Note:** A certified assistant is an SDI and/or TDI Divemaster or equivalent from agencies recognized by TDI, with an air diluent CCR user qualification and a minimum of 30 hours logged diving on the CCR being taught

### 30.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of 20 logged open water dives. If completing a unit crossover, provide proof of 10 logged CCR dives in the last 12 months.
3. Provide proof as a TDI Nitrox Diver or equivalent from agencies recognized by TDI\*
4. If the rebreather is a TDI approved sidemount rebreather, the student must hold the TDI Sidemount Diver certification or equivalent, provide proof of 10 logged sidemount dives, and any additional requirements the sidemount rebreather manufacturer may have.

**Note:** Nitrox diver and/or Advanced Nitrox diver may be combined with this course

### 30.6 Course Structure and Duration

#### **Confined Water Execution:**

1. Minimum of 60 minutes confined water training to a maximum of 9 metres / 30 feet

#### **Open Water Execution**

1. Equipment configuration session, confined water session, and 50 metre fully-equipped CCR diver surface tow must be completed prior to open water training dives
2. Minimum of 420 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 7 dives with a gradual increase in depth each day to a maximum of 30 metres/100 feet

#### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level
2. The final exam may be given orally if not available in a language the student understands

#### **Duration**

1. Minimum of 6 hours academic development and 2 hours equipment maintenance workshop
2. The duration of the entire course must take a minimum of 5 days

**Crossover:** If a student already qualified as a TDI Air Diluent CCR Diver or equivalent wishes to qualify on another CCR recognized by TDI, the student must follow all unit specific course standards and meet all skill performance requirements. The only changes during the unit crossover are:

1. Minimum of 60 minutes confined water training to a maximum of 9 metres / 30 feet
2. Minimum of 240 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 4 dives to a maximum depth of 30 metres / 100 feet
3. If a student already is qualified as a Kiss Spirit air diluent diver and is crossing over to the Sidewinder, the student must complete an academic session covering unit build, hose routing, donning and doffing, and a minimum of 180 minutes open water training over a minimum of 3 dives.

## 30.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Download student's dive logs of all training dives.
2. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 30.8 Training Materials

### The following are required for this course:

1. *TDI Diving Rebreathers Student Manual*
2. *TDI Diving Rebreathers Instructor Guide*
3. *TDI Diving Rebreathers PowerPoint Presentation*
4. Manufacturer's manual and updates
5. Manufacturer's Build Checklist
6. *TDI CCR Preflight Checklist*
7. *Rebreather course evaluation form* (see appendix)
8. Manufacturer's minimum training standards and any additional course forms required by the manufacturer

### Optional

Mel Clark- *Rebreathers Simplified*

## 30.9 Required Equipment

The following equipment is required for each student:

1. A complete closed circuit rebreather . Any modifications to the unit must be approved by the manufacturer
2. Minimum of 1 CCR dive computer, or bottom timer and depth gauge
3. Mask, fins and a suitable line-cutting device
4. Slate and pencil
5. Reel with a minimum of 40 metres / 130 feet of line
6. Lift-bag / delayed surface marker buoy (DSMB) with adequate lift and size for the dive environment
7. Exposure suit appropriate for the open water environment where training will be conducted
8. Access to an oxygen analyzer
9. Appropriate weight
10. Bailout gas supply (and an externally carried redundant air source).

**Note:** The instructor and any certified assistant must also carry a bailout gas supply for the student(s) during all open water sessions. This redundant gas source must be greater than the instructor and any certified assistant's rebreather requirement

## 30.10 Required Subject Areas

The *TDI Diving Rebreathers Student Manual* or eLearning and the manufacturer's manual are mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during the course:

1. History and Evolution of Rebreathers
2. Comparison of Open Circuit, Closed Circuit and Semi Closed Circuit Rebreather Systems and the Benefits/Problems with Each
3. Practical Mechanics of the System
  - a. Assembly and disassembly of the CCR
  - b. Layout and design of the unit
  - c. Absorbent canister design and maintenance
  - d. Breathing loop de-contamination procedures
  - e. Manufacturer supported additional items:bailout valve, automatic diluent valve, etc
  - f. Loop volume – minimum/optimum
4. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) risks: Hyperoxia, Toxicity, Hypoxia
  - b. Nitrogen absorption
  - c. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) toxicity, Hypercapnia

5. Proper Scrubber Packing; in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation
  - a. Gas consumption
6. Electronic or Manual Systems Design and Maintenance
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) metabolizing calculations
  - b. Fuel cells
  - c. System electronics functionality and calibration procedures
7. Dive Tables
  - a. Constant partial pressure of oxygen (PPO<sub>2</sub>) theory
  - b. Central nervous system (CNS) and awareness of oxygen tracking units (OTU) tracking
8. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. Constant PO<sub>2</sub>
  - c. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) integrated
  - d. Decompression conservatism/Gradient factor selection
9. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
  - b. Gas requirements including bailout scenarios
  - c. Scrubber duration
  - d. Oxygen limitations
  - e. Nitrogen limitations
10. Emergency Procedures
  - a. Use of B.A.D.- D.A.S. – Bail out, Anxiety breaths, Decide – Diluent flush, Always know your PO<sub>2</sub>, Skills to overcome problem
  - b. Three H's problems
  - c. Flooded loop
  - d. Cell warnings
  - e. Battery warnings and electronic failures

## 30.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements

All standards set by both TDI and the rebreather manufacturer must be met, while maximum limits of neither may be exceeded.

The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open-water dives with the following course limits:

1. All skills must be demonstrated by the instructor on the unit-specific CCR
2. All open water dives must be between 9 metres / 30 feet and 30 metres / 100 feet
3. Two dives must be deeper than 20 metres / 60 feet and one dive must be deeper than 27 metres / 90 feet
4. Satisfactorily complete any additional skills required by the unit specific manufacturer.
5. PO<sub>2</sub> not to exceed manufacturer recommendation or a working limit of 1.3 bar
6. All dives to be completed within CNS percentage limits with a recommend maximum of 80 percent of the total PO<sub>2</sub> CNS limit
7. Safety stops to be conducted with a minimum 3 minutes at 6 metres / 20 feet
8. Where the user opts for an automatic diluent valve (ADV) fitted by the manufacturer additional skills such as regular diluent gauge monitoring and addition control must be emphasized

### Open Water Skills:

1. Pre-dive checks
  - a. Unit buildup
  - b. Scrubber canister check
  - c. Breathing loop check
  - d. Positive and negative check
2. Verify diluent and oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) cylinder contents using O<sub>2</sub> analyzer where appropriate
3. Demonstrate correct pre-dive planning procedures including
  - a. Limits based on system performance
  - b. Limits based on oxygen exposures at chosen PPO<sub>2</sub> levels
  - c. Limits based on nitrogen absorption at planned depth and PO<sub>2</sub> setpoint
  - d. Appropriate selection of decompression conservatism/gradient factors for planned dive
  - e. Thermal constraints

4. Emergency procedures
  - a. Mouthpiece familiarity drills
  - b. Bailout drills
  - c. Gas shutdowns and loss of gas
  - d. Broken hoses
  - e. Flooded absorbent canister
  - f. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) breakthrough
  - g. Low oxygen drills
  - h. High oxygen drills
  - i. Flooding loop
  - j. Electronics and battery failure
  - k. Properly execute the ascent procedures for an incapacitated CCR diver and tow the diver a minimum of 50 metres at the surface with both rescuer and victim wearing complete CCR diving system and bailout system
5. Use of BCD/suit and effective management of loop breathing volume for buoyancy control
6. Stop at 3-6 metres / 10 – 20 feet on descent for leak bubble check
7. Electronics systems monitoring for PO<sub>2</sub> levels (SETPOINT) and switching setpoints
8. Manual control of setpoint if electronically controlled CCR is not used
9. Use and adjustment of Heads Up Displays and computers
10. Mask removal and replacement
11. Use of lift bag / delayed surface marker buoy and reel (where relevant and applicable)
12. Proper execution of the dive within all pre-determined dive limits
13. Demonstration of safety stops at pre-determined depths
14. Constant loop volume management
15. Cell validation checks with appropriate use of diluent and oxygen
16. Post dive clean of unit
  - a. Mouth piece and hoses
  - b. Clean and disinfect unit
  - c. Inspect components of unit
17. Diver maintenance of unit
  - a. Cell remove and replace
  - b. Mouthpiece strip and rebuild
  - c. Replacing/recharging batteries

**In order to complete the course and achieve the TDI Air Diluent CCR rating the student must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the written examination with a minimum score of 80 percent
2. Complete to the instructor's satisfaction, all confined and open water skill development sessions
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Course must be completed within 6 weeks from the starting date
5. Complete a refresher course following a period of inactivity greater than 6 months following the course

**The following articles and books are recommended reading and allow wider understanding.**

1. Richard Pyle - *A Learners Guide to Closed Circuit Rebreather Operations*
2. Kenneth Donald - *Oxygen & the Diver*
3. John Lamb - *Oxygen Measurement for Divers*
4. Barsky, Thurlow & Ward - *The Simple Guide to Rebreather Diving*
5. Bob Cole - *Rebreather Diving*
6. Jeffrey Bozanic - *Mastering Rebreathers*



## **31. Air Diluent Closed Circuit Rebreather Decompression Procedures Diver, Unit Specific-**

### **31.1 Introduction**

This is the second level certification course for divers wishing to utilize a closed circuit rebreather (CCR) for air diving. The objective of the course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures for diving a CCR and to develop basic CCR diving skills to a maximum depth of 40 metres / 130 feet using an air diluent for formal decompression diving.

### **31.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in decompression diving activities utilizing a CCR without direct supervision provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities approximate those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Mixed Gas CCR unit specific course
2. TDI Advanced Wreck Course

### **31.3 Who May Teach**

An active TDI Instructor with a TDI Air Diluent CCR Decompression Procedures Instructor rating for the specific unit being used.

### **31.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor is allowed. One additional student may be added if they are doing a refresher or unit crossover.

**Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor is allowed. One additional student may be added if they are doing a refresher or unit crossover.
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

**31.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of 50 logged dives. If completing a unit crossover, at least 10 logged CCR dives in the last 12 months.
3. Provide proof of TDI Advanced Nitrox Diver and Deco Procedures Diver or equivalent from agencies recognized by TDI
4. If the rebreather is a TDI approved sidemount rebreather, the student must hold the TDI Sidemount Diver certification or equivalent, provide proof of 10 logged sidemount dives, and any additional requirements the sidemount rebreather manufacturer may have.

**OR**

1. Minimum age 18
2. TDI Air Diluent CCR Diver certified or equivalent,
3. Minimum of 30 hours and 30 dives on the CCR unit.
4. Six months CCR diving experience

**31.6 Course Structure and Duration****Confined Water Execution**

1. Minimum of 60 minutes confined water training to a maximum of 9 metres / 30 feet

**Open Water Execution**

1. Equipment configuration session, confined water session, and 50 metre fully-equipped CCR diver surface tow must be completed prior to open water training dives
2. Minimum of 420 minutes open water training, to be completed over a minimum of 7 dives with a gradual increase in depth each day to a maximum of 40 metres / 130 feet

**Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level
2. The final exam may be given orally if not available in a language the student understands

**Duration**

1. Minimum of 6 hours academic development and 2 hours equipment maintenance workshop
2. The duration of the entire course must take a minimum of 5 days

**Crossover**

1. If a student already qualified as a TDI Air Diluent CCR Deco Procedures Diver or equivalent wishes to qualify on another CCR recognized by TDI, the student must follow all unit specific course standards and meet all skill performance requirements. The only changes during the unit crossover are:
  - a. Minimum of 60 minutes confined water training to a maximum of 9 metres / 30 feet
  - b. Minimum of 240 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 4 dives to a maximum of 40 metres / 130 feet , with two dives deeper than 30 metres/100 ft.
2. If a student already is qualified as a TDI Kiss Spirit air diluent decompression diver or equivalent and is crossing over to the Sidewinder, the student must complete an academic session covering unit build, hose routing, donning and doffing, and a minimum of 180 minutes open water training over a minimum of 3 dives.

**Upgrades**

1. If a student has the TDI Air Diluent certification and wishes to do the decompression part of this course, only 240 minutes in open water is required. Students will complete a skills evaluation dive plus a minimum of 4 open water dives with 2 dives deeper than 30 meters/100 feet.
2. The student must have a minimum of 30 logged hours over 30 dives before enrollment on the deco course
3. Six months CCR diving experience

## 31.7 Administrative Requirements

### Administrative Tasks:

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

### Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:

1. Download and retain student's dive logs of all training dives.
2. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

## 31.8 Training Materials

### Required materials:

1. *TDI Diving Rebreathers Student Manual* or eLearning
2. *TDI Diving Rebreathers Instructor Guide*
3. Manufacturer's manual and updates
4. *TDI Decompression Procedures Student Manual* or eLearning
5. *TDI Advanced Nitrox Student Manual* or eLearning
6. Manufacturer's Build Checklist
7. Manufacturer's minimum training standards
8. *TDI CCR Preflight Checklist*
9. *Rebreather course evaluation form* (see appendix)

### Optional:

1. *TDI Diving Rebreathers PowerPoint Presentation*
2. *Mel Clark- Rebreathers Simplified*
3. *Skills prompt slates*

## 31.9 Required Equipment

**The following equipment is required:**

1. A complete closed circuit rebreather . Any modifications to the unit must be approved by the manufacturer
2. Minimum of 1 CCR dive computer and 1 backup OC/CCR computer for bailout in event of system failure
3. Mask, fins and a suitable line-cutting device
4. Slate and pencil
5. Reel with a minimum of 50 metres / 165 feet of line
6. Lift bag / delayed surface marker buoy (DSMB) with adequate lift and size for the dive environment and a backup. Required for open water environments only.
7. Exposure suit appropriate for the open water environment where training will be conducted
8. Access to an oxygen analyzer
9. Appropriate weight
10. Bailout gas supply cylinder with a minimum capacity of 5.7 litres / 40 cu ft air or nitrox may be used

**Note:** The instructor and any certified assistant will also carry a bailout gas supply during all open water sessions. This redundant gas source must be greater than the instructor and any certified assistant's bailout requirements.

## 31.10 Required Subject Areas

**The *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual or eLearning and the manufacturer's manual are mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during the course.**

1. History and Evolution of Rebreathers
2. Comparison of Open Circuit, Closed Circuit and Semi Closed Circuit Rebreather Systems and the Benefits/Problems with Each
3. Practical Mechanics of the System
  - a. Assembly and disassembly of the unit
  - b. Layout and design of the unit
  - c. Absorbent canister design and maintenance
  - d. Proper packing of canister, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations

- e. Breathing loop de-contamination procedures
- f. Manufacturer supported additional items (Bailout valve, Automatic Diluent Valve, etc)
- g. Loop volume – minimum/optimum
- 4. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) risks: Hyperoxia, Toxicity, Hypoxia
  - b. Nitrogen absorption
  - c. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) toxicity, Hypercapnia
  - d. Gas consumption
- 5. Electronic and Manual Systems Design and Maintenance
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) metabolizing calculations
  - b. Fuel cells
    - i. Maintenance
    - ii. Replacement
    - iii. Manufacturing date
  - c. System electronics functionality and calibration procedures
- 6. Dive Tables
  - a. Constant partial pressure of oxygen (PPO<sub>2</sub>) theory
  - b. Central nervous system (CNS) and awareness of oxygen tracking units (OTU)
- 7. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. Constant percentage of oxygen (PO<sub>2</sub>)
  - c. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) integrated
  - d. Decompression conservatism/Gradient factor selection
- 8. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
  - b. Gas requirements including bailout scenarios
  - c. Scrubber duration
  - d. Oxygen limitations
  - e. Nitrogen limitations
- 9. Emergency Procedures
  - a. Use of B.A.D.-D.A.S. - Bail out, Anxiety breaths, Decide – Diluent flush, Always know your PO<sub>2</sub>, Skills to overcome problem
  - b. Three H's problems
  - c. Flooded loop
  - d. Cell warnings
  - e. Battery warnings and electronic failures
  - f. Bailout gas requirements

## **31.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**All standards set by both TDI and the rebreather manufacturer must be met, while maximum limits of neither may be exceeded.**

**The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open water dives with the following course limits:**

1. All skills must be demonstrated by the instructor on the unit-specific CCR
2. All open water dives must be between 9 metres / 30 feet to 40 metres / 130 feet
3. Two dives must be deeper than 20 metres / 66 feet and two dives must be deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet
4. Satisfactorily complete any additional skills required by the unit specific manufacturer.
5. PO<sub>2</sub> not to exceed manufacturer's recommendation or a working limit of 1.3 bar
6. All dives to be completed within CNS percent limits with a recommend maximum of 80 percent of the total PO<sub>2</sub> CNS limit
7. Safety stops to be conducted with a minimum 3 minutes at 6 metres / 20 feet
8. When the user opts for an automatic diluent valve (ADV) fitted by the manufacturer, additional skills such as regular diluent gauge monitoring and addition control must be emphasized
9. Calculate deep bailout gas at 45.30 litres / 1.6 cubic feet per minute usage and at 30 liters/1.1 cubic feet per minute if a separate deco gas is carried
10. All dives to be completed within appropriate constant PO<sub>2</sub> decompression tables
11. Student is only certified for decompression diving on the specific CCR unit
12. Students must do one bailout from depth on open circuit to include simulated or actual decompression

### **Open Water Skills:**

1. Pre dive checks
  - a. Unit build-up
  - b. Scrubber packing
  - c. Positive and negative checks
2. Verify diluent and O<sub>2</sub> cylinder contents using O<sub>2</sub> analyzer
3. Demonstrate correct pre dive planning procedures including

- a. Limits based on system performance
  - b. Limits based on oxygen exposures at chosen PPO<sub>2</sub> levels
  - c. Limits based on nitrogen absorption at planned depth and PO<sub>2</sub> setpoint
  - d. Appropriate selection of decompression conservatism/gradient factors for planned dive
  - e. Thermal constraints
4. Emergency procedures
- a. Mouthpiece familiarity drills
  - b. Bailout drills
  - c. Gas shutdowns and loss of gas
  - d. Broken hoses
  - e. Flooded absorbent canister
  - f. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) breakthrough
  - g. Semi-closed mode
  - h. Low oxygen drills
  - i. High oxygen drills
  - j. Flooding loop
  - k. Electronics and battery failure
  - l. Properly execute the ascent procedures for an incapacitated CCR diver and tow the diver a minimum of 50 metres at the surface with both rescuer and victim wearing complete CCR diving system and bailout system.
5. Use of BCD/suit and effective management of loop breathing volume for buoyancy control
6. Stop at 3-6 metres / 10 – 20 feet on descent for leak bubble check
7. Electronics systems monitoring for PO<sub>2</sub> levels (SETPOINT) and switching setpoints
8. Manual control of setpoint if electronically controlled CCR is not used
9. Use and adjustment of Heads Up Displays and computers
10. Mask removal and replacement
11. Use of lift bag / delayed surface marker buoy and reel
12. Proper execution of the dive within all pre-determined dive limits
13. Constant loop volume management
14. Cell validation checks with appropriate use of diluent and oxygen
15. Post dive clean of unit to avoid contamination and spread of disease



**If this is the first CCR course taken on the unit the following must be included:**

1. Post dive clean of unit
  - a. Mouth piece and hoses
  - b. Clean and disinfect unit
  - c. Inspect components of unit
2. Dive maintenance of unit
  - a. Cell remove and replace
  - b. Mouth piece strip and rebuild
  - c. Replacing/recharging batteries

**Decompression related in water skills:**

1. Demonstrate comfort swimming on surface and at depth carrying 1 bailout/decompression cylinder
2. Demonstrate ability to drop and retrieve 1 bailout/decompression cylinder while maintaining position in the water column
3. Demonstrate ability to deploy SMB or lift-bag solo and as a member of a team
4. Demonstrate appropriate reaction to gas hemorrhage from manifold or first stage, SPG and primary regulator
5. Demonstrate appropriate reaction to simulated free-flowing deco regulator
6. Buddy breathing deco gas for at least 1 minute
7. Oxygen rebreather mode at less than 6 metres / 20 foot stop
8. Complete 1 bailout scenario at depth to include simulated or actual decompression obligation on open circuit

**In order to complete the course and achieve the TDI Air Diluent****Decompression Procedures CCR rating the student must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the written examination with a minimum score of 80 percent and 100% remediation
2. Complete to the instructor's satisfaction all confined and open water skill development sessions
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Course must be completed within 6 weeks from the starting date
5. Complete a refresher course following a period of inactivity greater than 6 months following the course

**Recommended Additional Reading and Support Material**

1. Richard Pyle - *A Learners Guide to Closed Circuit Rebreather Operations*
2. Kenneth Donald - *Oxygen & The Diver*
3. John Lamb - *Oxygen Measurement for Divers*
4. Barsky, Thurlow & Ward - *The Simple Guide to Rebreather Diving*
5. Bob Cole - *Rebreather Diving*
6. Jeffrey Bozanic - *Mastering Rebreathers*

## **32. Helitrox Diluent Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver Decompression Procedures Course, Unit Specific**

### **32.1 Introduction**

This is the second entry level certification course for divers wishing to utilize a closed circuit rebreather (CCR) for mixed gas diving using a Helitrox diluent. The objective of the course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures for diving a CCR and to develop basic CCR diving skills, to a maximum of 45 metres / 150 feet, using an air/nitrox/helium diluent for formal decompression diving. Student are permitted to utilize a diluent and bailout mix with no greater than a 35% helium content (+/- 5%) and no less than a 21% oxygen content and are permitted to use up to 100% oxygen for decompression.

### **32.2 Qualifications of Graduates**

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in decompression diving activities utilizing a CCR without direct supervision provided

The diving activities approximate those of training

1. The areas of activities approximate those of training
2. Environmental conditions approximate those of training
3. Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:
4. TDI Mixed Gas CCR unit specific course
5. TDI Advanced Wreck Course

### **32.3 Who May Teach**

An active TDI Instructor with a TDI Helitrox Diluent CCR Decompression Procedures Instructor rating for the specific unit being used.

### **32.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

**Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor is allowed. One additional student may be added if they are doing a refresher or unit crossover.

**Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor is allowed. One additional student may be added if they are doing a refresher or unit crossover.
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

**32.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of 50 logged dives. If completing a unit crossover, provide proof of 10 logged CCR dives in the last 12 months.
3. Minimum certification level of TDI Advanced Nitrox Diver, Deco Procedures Diver or Helitrox diver or equivalent from agencies recognized by TDI
4. If the rebreather is a TDI approved sidemount rebreather, the student must hold the TDI Sidemount Diver certification or equivalent, provide proof of 10 logged sidemount dives, and any additional requirements the sidemount rebreather manufacturer may have.

**OR**

1. Minimum age 18
2. TDI Air Diluent CCR Diver certified or equivalent
3. Minimum of 30 hours and 30 dives on the CCR unit
4. Six months CCR diving experience

**32.6 Course Structure and Duration****Confined Water Execution**

1. Minimum of 60 minutes confined water training to a maximum of 9 metres / 30 feet

**Open Water Execution**

1. Equipment configuration session, confined water session, and 50m fully-equipped CCR diver surface tow must be completed prior to open water training dives
2. Minimum of 420 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 7 dives with a gradual increase in depth each day to a maximum of 45 metres / 150 feet

**Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level
2. The final exam may be given orally if not available in a language the student understands

**Duration**

1. Minimum of 6 hours academic development and 2 hours equipment maintenance workshop
2. The duration of the entire course must be spread over a minimum of 5 days

**Crossover**

1. If a student already qualified as a TDI Helitrox Diluent CCR Deco Procedures Diver or equivalent wishes to qualify on another CCR recognized by TDI, the student must follow all unit specific course standards and meet all skill performance requirements. The only changes during the unit crossover are:
  - a. Minimum of 60 minutes confined water training to a maximum of 9 metres / 30 feet
  - b. Minimum of 240 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 4 dives to a maximum of 45 metres / 150 feet with two dives deeper than 35 metres/115 feet.
2. If a student already is qualified as a TDI Kiss Spirit helitrox decompression diver or equivalent and is crossing over to the Sidewinder, the student must complete an academic session covering unit build, hose routing, donning and doffing, and a minimum of 180 minutes open water training over a minimum of 3 dives.

**Upgrades**

1. If a student has the TDI Air Diluent, or equivalent, certification and wishes to do the Helitrox decompression part of this course, only 240 minutes open water are required. Students will complete a skills evaluation dive plus a minimum of 4 open water dives with two dives deeper than 35 metres/115 feet.
2. The student needs to have a minimum of 30 logged hours over 30 dives before enrolment on the Helitrox deco course
3. Six months CCR diving experience
4. If a student has the TDI Air Diluent Decompression certification and wishes to do the Helitrox decompression part of this course, only 120 minutes open water are required over a minimum of two dives, with both dives deeper than 35 metres/115 feet.

**32.7 Administrative Requirements****Administrative Tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the Instructor must:**

1. Download and retain student's dive logs of all training dives.
2. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the student online through the member's area of the TDI website

**32.8 Training Materials****Required Materials**

1. *TDI Diving Rebreathers Student Manual or eLearning*
2. *TDI Diving Rebreathers Instructor Guide*
3. Manufacturer's manual and updates
4. Manufacturer's Build Checklist
5. *TDI CCR Preflight Checklist*
6. *TDI Decompression Procedures Student Manual*
7. *TDI Extended Range and Trimix Diver Student Manual* or eLearning
8. *TDI Advanced Nitrox Student Manual or eLearning*
9. *Rebreather Course Evaluation Form* (see appendix)
10. Manufacturer's minimum training standards

**Optional**

1. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* PowerPoint Presentation
2. Mel Clark- Rebreathers Simplified
3. *Skills prompt* slates

**32.9 Required Equipment**

**The following equipment is required:**

1. A complete closed circuit rebreather. Any modifications to the unit must be approved by the manufacturer.
2. Minimum of 1 CCR dive computer and 1 backup OC/CCR computer for bailout in event of system failure
3. Mask, fins and a suitable line-cutting device
4. Slate and pencil
5. Reel with a minimum of 50 metres / 165 feet of line
6. Lift Bag / Delayed Surface Marker Buoy (DSMB) with adequate lift and size for the dive environment and a backup. Required for open water environments only.
7. Exposure suit appropriate for the open water environment where training will be conducted
8. Access to an oxygen/helium analyzer
9. Appropriate weight
10. Bailout gas supply cylinder with appropriate capacity of gas for planned dive

**Note:** The instructor and any certified assistant will also carry a bailout gas supply during all open water sessions. This redundant gas source must be greater than the instructor and any certified assistant's bailout requirements.

**32.10 Required Subject Areas**

**The *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual or eLearning and the manufacturer's manual are mandatory for use during this course but instructors may use any additional text or materials that they feel help present these topics. The following topics must be covered during the course.**

1. History and Evolution of Rebreathers
2. Comparison of Open Circuit, Closed Circuit and Semi Closed Circuit Rebreather Systems and the Benefits/Problems with Each

3. Practical Mechanics of the System
  - a. Assembly and disassembly of the unit
  - b. Layout and design of the unit
  - c. Absorbent canister design and maintenance
  - d. Proper packing of canister, in accordance with manufactures recommendations
  - e. Breathing loop de-contamination procedures
  - f. Manufacturer supported additional items (bailout valve, automatic diluent valve, etc.)
  - g. Loop volume – minimum/optimum
4. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) risks: Hyperoxia, Toxicity, Hypoxia
  - b. Nitrogen absorption
  - c. CO<sub>2</sub> toxicity, Hypercapnia
  - d. Gas consumption
5. Electronic and Manual Systems Design and Maintenance
  - a. O<sub>2</sub> metabolizing calculations
  - b. Fuel cells
    - i. Maintenance
    - ii. Replacement
    - iii. Manufacturing date
  - c. System electronics functionality and calibration procedures
6. Dive Tables
  - a. Constant partial pressure of oxygen (PPO<sub>2</sub>) theory
  - b. Central nervous system (CNS) and awareness of oxygen tracking units (OTU)
7. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix ajustable
  - b. Constant PO<sub>2</sub>
  - c. O<sub>2</sub> integrated
  - d. Decompression conservatism/Gradient factor selection
8. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
  - b. Gas requirements including bailout scenarios
  - c. Scrubber duration
  - d. Oxygen limitations
  - e. Nitrogen limitations

**9. Emergency Procedures**

- a. Use of B.A.D.-D.A.S.. - Bail out, Anxiety breaths, Decide – Diluent flush, Always know your PO<sub>2</sub>, Skills to overcome problem
- b. Three H's problems
- c. Flooded loop
- d. Cell warnings
- e. Battery warnings and electronic failures
- f. Bailout gas requirements

**10. Helium Considerations**

- a. Helium absorption and elimination
- b. Advantages of hyperoxic mixes for decompression
- c. Advantages of helium for bottom gas
- d. Hypoxia
- e. HPNS
- f. Effects on respiration
- g. Effects as an insulator
- h. Helium limitations

## **32.11 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**All standards set by both TDI and the rebreather manufacturer must be met, while maximum limits of neither may be exceeded.**

**The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open-water dives with the following course limits:**

1. All open water dives must be between 9 metres / 30 feet to 45 metres / 150 feet
2. All skills must be demonstrated by the instructor on the unit-specific CCR
3. Two dives must be deeper than 20 metres / 66 feet and two dives must be deeper than 35 metres / 115 feet
4. Satisfactorily complete any additional skills required by the unit specific manufacturer.
5. PO<sub>2</sub> not to exceed manufacturer recommendation or a working limit of 1.3 bar
6. All dives to be completed within CNS% limits with a recommend maximum of 80% of the total PO<sub>2</sub> CNS limit
7. Safety stops to be conducted with a minimum 3 minutes at 6 metres / 20 feet



8. Where the user opts for an automatic diluent valve (ADV) fitted by the manufacturer additional skills such as regular diluent gauge monitoring and addition control must be emphasized
9. Calculate bailout gas at 45 litres /1.6 cubic feet per minute usage for deep mix and at 30 liters/1.1 cubic feet per minute for decompression gas(ses)
10. All dives to be completed within appropriate fixed PO<sub>2</sub> decompression tables or decompression planning software
11. Student is only certified for Helitrox decompression diving on the specific CCR unit
12. Students must do one bailout from depth on o/c to include simulated or actual decompression

**Open Water Skills:**

1. Pre dive checks
  - a. Unit build-up
  - b. Scrubber packing
  - c. Positive and negative checks
2. Verify diluent and O<sub>2</sub> cylinder contents using O<sub>2</sub> analyzer
3. Demonstrate correct pre dive planning procedures including
  - a. Limits based on system performance
  - b. Limits based on oxygen exposures at chosen PPO<sub>2</sub> levels
  - c. Limits based on nitrogen absorption at planned depth and PO<sub>2</sub> set-point
  - d. Appropriate selection of decompression conservatism/gradient factors for planned dive
  - e. Thermal constraints
4. Emergency procedures
  - a. Mouthpiece familiarity drills
  - b. Bailout drills
  - c. Gas shutdowns and loss of gas
  - d. Broken hoses
  - e. Flooded absorbent canister
  - f. CO<sub>2</sub> breakthrough
  - g. Semi-closed mode
  - h. Low oxygen drills
  - i. High oxygen drills
  - j. Flooding Loop
  - k. Electronics and battery failure
  - l. Properly execute the ascent procedures for an incapacitated CCR diver and tow the diver a minimum of 50 metres at the surface with both rescuer and victim wearing complete CCR diving system and bailout system

5. Use of BCD/suit and effective management of loop breathing volume for buoyancy control
6. Stop at 3-6 metres / 10 – 20 feet on descent for leak bubble check
7. Electronics systems monitoring for PO<sub>2</sub> levels (SETPOINT) and switching set-points
8. Manual control of set-point if electronically controlled CCR is not used
9. Use and adjustment of Heads Up Displays and computers
10. Mask removal and replacement
11. Use of lift-bag / delayed surface marker buoy and reel
12. Proper execution of the dive within all pre-determined dive limits
  - a. Constant-loop volume management
13. Cell validation checks with appropriate use of diluent and oxygen
14. Post dive clean of unit to avoid contamination and spread of disease

**If this is the first CCR course taken on the unit the following must be included**

1. Post dive clean of unit
  - a. Mouth piece and hoses
  - b. Clean and disinfect unit
  - c. Inspect components of unit
2. Dive maintenance of unit
  - a. Cell remove and replace
  - b. Mouth piece strip and rebuild
  - c. Replacing batteries/recharging

### **Decompression related in water skills**

1. Demonstrate comfort swimming on surface and at depth carrying 1 bailout/decompression cylinder
2. Demonstrate ability to drop and retrieve one bailout/decompression cylinder while maintaining position in the water column
3. Demonstrate ability to deploy SMB or lift-bag solo and as a member of a team
4. Demonstrate appropriate reaction to gas hemorrhage from manifold or first stage, SPG and primary regulator
5. Demonstrate appropriate reaction to simulated free-flowing deco regulator
6. Buddy breathing deco gas for at least 1 minute
7. Oxygen rebreather mode at less than 6 metres / 20 foot stop
8. Complete 1 bailout scenario at depth to include decompression obligation on open circuit

**In order to complete the course and achieve the TDI Helitrox Diluent Decompression Procedures CCR rating the student must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the written examination with a pass mark of 80% and 100% remediation
2. Complete to the instructor's satisfaction all confined and open water skill development sessions
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Course must be completed within 6 weeks from the starting date
5. Complete a refresher course following a period of inactivity greater than 6 months following the course

**Recommended Additional Reading and Support Material**

1. Richard Pyle - *A Learners Guide to Closed Circuit Rebreather Operations*
2. Kenneth Donald - *Oxygen & The Diver*
3. John Lamb - *Oxygen Measurement for Divers*
4. Barsky, Thurlow & Ward - *The Simple Guide to Rebreather Diving*
5. Bob Cole - *Rebreather Diving*
6. Jeffrey Bozanic - *Mastering Rebreathers*

## 33. Mixed Gas Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver, Unit Specific

\* Discovery MK VI / SE7EN / Se7en must be equipped with full 60 M upgrades, including 60M-emodule and counterlungs with manual addition valves.

### 33.1 Introduction

This is the intermediate level certification course for divers wishing to utilize a closed circuit rebreather (CCR) for mixed gas diving. The objective of the course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures for mixed gas diving on the unit specific CCR, utilizing a mixed gas diluent containing 16 percent or greater oxygen, and to develop intermediate CCR diving skills appropriate to technical diving to a maximum depth of 60 metres / 200 feet.

### 33.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in technical diving activities utilizing the unit specific CCR to a maximum of 60 metres / 200 feet, utilizing a mixed gas diluent containing 16 percent or greater oxygen provided:

1. The diving activities approximate those of training
2. The areas of activities approximate those of training
3. Environmental conditions approximate those of training

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Advanced Mixed Gas Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver, unit specific.

### 33.3 Who May Teach

An active TDI Closed Circuit Rebreather Instructor, with a unit specific TDI Mixed Gas Instructor rating.

### **33.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### **Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)**

1. N/A

#### **Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor is allowed
2. The ratio should be reduced as appropriate due to environmental or operational constraints

### **33.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide a verified log of a minimum of 50 rebreather hours distributed over a minimum of 50 dives on the specific rebreather. Valid logged dives must be deeper than 9 metres / 20 feet, at least 20 must be deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet, and at least 10 dives requiring staged decompression. If the diver has 50 hours on another CCR unit recognized by TDI, only 25 hours/25 dives are required to be on the specific unit. If completing a unit crossover, provide proof of at least 10 logged CCR dives in the last 12 months.
3. Certified as a TDI Air Diluent Decompression Procedures Rebreather/ TDI CCR Helitrox Diluent Decompression Procedures Diver course or equivalent from agencies recognized by TDI

### **33.6 Course Structure and Duration**

#### **Open Water Execution**

1. Open water drills practice air diluent dive and 50m fully-equipped CCR diver surface tow must be completed prior to conducting mixed gas diluent training dives
2. Minimum of 360 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 6 dives including 1 equipment configuration and drills practice air diluent dive to a maximum 40 metres / 130 feet and a minimum 60 minute duration.
3. All subsequent dives to build incrementally in no greater than 10 metres / 33 feet steps

4. A minimum of 5 dives must be conducted on mixed gas diluent.
5. All mixed gas dives are to be deeper than 40 metres / 130 feet, utilizing a mixed gas diluent containing 16 percent or greater oxygen, to a maximum depth of 60 metres/200 feet
6. A minimum of four dives must be decompression dives. At least two dives should be deeper than 50 metres/165 feet and at least one dive must have a total run time greater than 60 minutes. Decompression obligation for the first two decompression dives must not exceed 30 minutes, and for the third and subsequent decompression dives, must not exceed 60 minutes.

**Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level
2. Oral examinations are permitted if the exam is not available in a language the student understands

**Duration**

1. Minimum of 6 hours for academic development and a further 2 hours for equipment configuration workshop

**Crossover**

1. If a student already qualified as a TDI Mixed Gas CCR Diver or equivalent wishes to qualify on another CCR recognized by TDI, the student must meet all crossover requirements for Air Diluent Deco or Helitrox Deco CCR, follow all unit specific course standards, and meet all skill performance requirements. The only changes during the unit crossover are:
  - a. Minimum of 120 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 2 dives to a maximum of 60 metres / 200 feet.
  - b. Must demonstrate proficiency in all required skills at the Mixed Gas diluent level

## **33.7 Administrative Requirements**

**The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Download and retain student's dive logs of all training dives
2. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters/Regional Office or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

**33.8 Required Equipment****The following are required for this course:**

1. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual or eLearning
2. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Instructor Guide
3. *TDI Extended Range and Trimix* Student Manual or eLearning
4. *TDI Extended Range and Trimix* Instructor Guide
5. *TDI CCR Preflight Checklist*
6. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* PowerPoint Presentation
7. Unit specific rebreather manual
8. Unit specific rebreather examination if required by the manufacturer
9. Manufacturer's Build Checklist
10. Manufacturer's manual and updates

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. A complete closed circuit rebreather configured within the manufacturers recommendations; this should be the student's personal unit
2. One (1) CCR mixed gas computer and 1 backup OC/CCR computer for bailout in the event of a system failure
3. Bailout gas cylinders (minimum 2) with the appropriate capacity for the planned dive, each equipped with a first and second stage and SPG.
4. Mask, backup mask, fins and a suitable line-cutting device
5. Slate and pencil
6. Reel with a minimum of 60 metres / 200 feet of line
7. Reel with a minimum of 30 metres / 100 feet of line
8. Two lift bags / delayed surface marker buoys (DSMB's) with adequate lift and size for the dive environment. Required for open water environments only.
9. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment where training will be conducted
10. Access to an oxygen analyzer
11. Access to a helium analyzer
12. Adequate weight

### 33.9 Required Subject Areas

The *TDI Diving Rebreathers Student Manual* or eLearning is required for use as a review/recap document. The instructor may use any additional text or materials they feel will represent the topic in an educational manner. The following topics must be covered during the course:

1. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
  - b. Hypoxia
  - c. Nitrogen absorption
  - d. Helium absorption
  - e. HPNS
  - f. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
  - g. Gas consumption
  - h. Gas mixing
2. Formula Work
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) metabolizing calculations
  - b. Manually controlled closed circuit rebreathers
  - c. Equivalent narcosis depth theory
  - d. Central nervous system (CNS) tracking
  - e. Oxygen tracking units (OTU)
  - f. Gas management
3. Dive Tables.
  - a. Creation of custom dive tables appropriate to dive depths
  - b. Creation of lower percentage of oxygen (PO<sub>2</sub>) diluent to support loop flushing and bailout at depth
4. Dive Computers.
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. Constant partial pressure of oxygen (PPO<sub>2</sub>)
  - c. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) integrated
  - d. Decompression conservatism/Gradient factor selection
5. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning
  - b. Scrubber duration
  - c. Gas requirements including bailout scenarios
  - d. Decompression on a CCR
  - e. Oxygen limitations
  - f. Nitrogen limitations
  - g. Helium limitations



6. Unit-specific checklist
7. Equipment Maintenance
  - a. Fuel cell management
    - i. Date stamps
    - ii. Replacement
  - b. Loop configurations
  - c. Additional fitted equipment and modifications
    - i. Auto diluent addition
    - ii. Dual mode mouthpieces
    - iii. Heads up display
    - iv. Additional manual injectors
    - v. Integrating oxygen monitors for dive computers

### **33.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open water dives with the following course limits:**

1. No dives deeper than 60 metres / 200 feet
2. No dives shallower than 40 meters / 130 feet, other than the 1 air diluent configuration dive are credited toward the dive requirements. Subsequent training dives in shallow water are permitted if necessary during the course.
3. Equivalent narcosis depth not to exceed 30 metres / 100 feet
4. Calculate bailout gas at 45 litres /1.6 cubic feet per minute usage for bottom mix and at 30 liters/1.1 cubic feet per minute for decompression gas(es)
5.  $PO_2$  not to exceed manufacturer recommendation or a working limit of 1.3 bar during the bottom phase of the dive and 1.4 bar during the decompression phase of the dive.
6. Diluent  $PO_2$  should not exceed 1.2 at maximum depth
7. All dives to be completed within appropriate fixed  $PO_2$  decompression tables or decompression planning software
8. All dives to be completed within CNS percentage limits with a recommend maximum of 80 percent of the total  $PO_2$  CNS limit
9. The student is only certified for CCR mixed gas diving on the rebreather being used

**Land Drills**

1. Build unit based on manufacturer's specifications using manufacturer's manual/build checklist
2. Demonstrate familiarity with basic and intermediate hand signals
3. Select and prepare equipment suitable for soft overhead environment with long decompression obligations
4. Conduct team-oriented drills for lift bag deployment and bailout procedures
5. Drills for buddy rescue
6. Properly analyze all gas mixtures to be used
7. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on system performance and scrubber duration
  - b. Limits based on bailout gas requirements
  - c. Limits based on oxygen exposures at chosen PPO<sub>2</sub> levels
  - d. Limits based on manually controlled closed circuit rebreathers
  - e. Limits based on nitrogen absorption at planned depth and PPO<sub>2</sub> (set-point) level
  - f. Limits based on helium absorption
  - g. Appropriate selection of decompression conservatism/gradient factors for planned dive
  - h. Correct narcotic depth planning and diluent selection to allow cell flushing at target depth (diluent should not exceed a PO<sub>2</sub> of 1.2 at maximum planned depth)

**Pre-dive Drills**

1. Conduct pre-dive checks using TDI Pre-flight checklist
2. Use START\* before every dive
3. Stress analysis and mitigation

**Open Water Skills:**

1. All skills must be demonstrated by the instructor on the unit-specific CCR
2. Show good awareness of team members through communications, proximity and team-oriented dive practices
3. Demonstrate buoyancy control; ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet
4. Mask removal and replacement, deploy backup mask
5. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and conclude the dive and decompression on open circuit gases carried from a depth greater than 30 metres/100 feet

6. Demonstrate ability to plug in and share off-board gas, including sharing/swapping of off-board bailout cylinders
7. Properly execute a recovery from system failure and conclude the dive and decompression with the unit in manual mode
8. Gas shutdowns and loss of gas, correct choice and switching to off board gases
9. Broken hoses, catastrophic failure scenarios
10. Flooded absorbent canister
11. Cell errors
12. SCR drill (minimum of 10 minutes)
13. Oxygen rebreather mode in depths less than 6 metres / 20 feet
14. Stop at 3 to 6 metres / 10 to 20 feet on descent for leak bubble check
15. Demonstrate competence managing 2 bailout cylinders, including drop and recovery while maintaining position in the water column
16. Deployment of a lift bag / delayed surface marker buoy (DSMB) at depth and mid water
17. Simulate failed lift bag / DSMB deployment
18. On 2 of the dives, demonstrate an ascent with ascent reel and lift bag and perform staged decompression
19. Electronics systems monitoring for PPO<sub>2</sub> levels
20. Cell validation checks with appropriate use of diluent and oxygen
21. Proper execution of the dive within all pre-determined dive limits
22. Demonstration of decompression stops at pre-determined depths
23. Demonstrate controlled ascent with simulated toxed diver including surface tow at least 50 metres / 165 feet with equipment removal on surface, in water too deep to stand in

**In order to complete the course and achieve the TDI Mixed Gas CCR rating the student must:**

1. Complete to the instructor's satisfaction all confined and open water skill development sessions
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Extended Range and Trimix examination with a minimum score of 80 percent
4. Course must be completed within 6 weeks from the starting date
5. Complete a refresher course following a period of inactivity greater than 6 months following the course

## 34. Advanced Mixed Gas Closed Circuit Rebreather Diver, Unit Specific

### 34.1 Introduction

This is the highest level certification course for divers wishing to utilize the unit specific closed circuit rebreather (CCR) for advanced mixed gas diving. The objective of the course is to train divers in the benefits, hazards and proper procedures for advanced mixed gas diving on a CCR and to develop advanced CCR diving skills appropriate to technical diving to a maximum depth of 100 metres / 330 feet (or shallower if mandated by local law).

**\* Poseidon SE7EN must be equipped with full 100M upgrades, including 100M-emodule and counter-lungs with manual addition valves.**

### 34.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in technical diving activities utilizing the unit specific CCR to a maximum depth of 100 metres / 330 feet utilizing any mixed gas diluent appropriate to the dive plan.

### 34.3 Who May Teach

An active TDI Instructor with a TDI unit specific advanced mixed gas CCR instructor rating

### 34.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

#### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### Confined Water (swimming pool-like conditions)

1. N/A

#### Open Water (ocean, lake, quarry, spring, river or estuary)

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor is allowed
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

### **34.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age of 18
2. Certified TDI CCR Mixed Gas Diluent diver, or equivalent from agencies recognized by TDI
3. Have a verified log of a minimum of 100 hours as a certified CCR diver over a minimum of 100 dives; a minimum of 50 hours and 50 dives must be on the unit specific CCR. Fifty percent of these dives must be deeper than 30 metres / 100 feet and a minimum of 20 logged CCR dives requiring staged decompression. All dives to be deeper than 9 metres / 20 feet

### **34.6 Course Structure and Duration**

#### **Open Water Execution:**

1. Minimum of 420 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 7 dives including 1 equipment configuration and drills practice air diluent dive to a maximum 40 metres/ 130 feet
2. All subsequent dives to build incrementally in no greater than 10 metres / 33 feet steps
3. A minimum of 6 dives must be conducted on mixed gas diluent
4. All mixed gas dives are to be deeper than 40 metres / 130 feet, and two dives should be deeper than 70 metres/230 feet.
5. Five of the mixed gas dives must be decompression dives. Planned decompression obligation for the first three decompression dives must not exceed 30 minutes and for subsequent decompression dives must not exceed 60 minutes. At least one dive must have a total run time longer than 60 minutes.

#### **Course Structure:**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level
2. The exam may be given orally if not available in a language the student understands

#### **Duration:**

1. Minimum of 6 hours for academic development and a further 2 hours for equipment configuration workshop

**Crossover**

1. If a student already qualified as a TDI Advanced Mixed Gas CCR Diver or equivalent wishes to qualify on another CCR recognized by TDI, the student must meet all crossover requirements for Air Diluent Deco or Helitrox Deco CCR as well as all crossover requirements for Mixed Gas Diluent CCR, follow all unit specific course standards, and meet all skill performance requirements. The only changes during the unit crossover are:
  - a. Minimum of 120 minutes open water training to be completed over a minimum of 2 dives to a maximum of 100 metres / 330 feet (unless a shallower depth is required by local law).
  - b. Must demonstrate proficiency in all required skills at the Advanced Mixed Gas diluent level

**34.7 Administrative Requirements**

**The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Download and retain student's dive logs of all training dives
2. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* to TDI Headquarters or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

**34.8 Required Equipment**

**The following are required for this course:**

1. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual or eLearning
2. *TDI Advanced Trimix* student manual or eLearning
3. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Instructor Guide
4. *TDI Advanced Trimix* Instructor Guide
5. Unit specific rebreather manual
6. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* PowerPoint Presentation
7. Manufacturer's manual and updates
8. Manufacturer's Build Checklist
9. *TDI CCR Preflight Checklist*

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. A complete unit specific CCR; this should be the student's personal unit. Any modifications must be approved by the manufacturer.
2. Minimum of 1 CCR mixed gas computer and 1 backup OC/CCR computer for bailout in the event of a system failure
3. Bailout gas cylinders (minimum 3) with the appropriate capacity for the planned dive, each equipped with a first and second stage and SPG.
4. Mask, backup mask, fins and a suitable line-cutting device
5. Slate and pencil
6. Reel or spool with a minimum of 100 metres / 330 feet of line
7. Reel with a minimum of 50 metres / 165 feet of line
8. Two lift bags / delayed surface marker buoys (DSMB's) with adequate lift and size for the dive environment
9. Exposure suit adequate for the open water environment where training will be conducted
10. Access to an oxygen analyzer
11. Access to a helium analyzer
12. Adequate weight

### 34.9 Required Subject Areas

**The *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual or eLearning is required for use as a review/recap document. The instructor may use any additional text or materials they feel will represent the topic in an educational manner. The following topics must be covered during the course:**

1. Gas Physiology
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
  - b. Hypoxia
  - c. Nitrogen absorption
  - d. Helium absorption
  - e. HPNS
  - f. Carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) toxicity
  - g. Gas consumption
  - h. Gas mixing
2. Formula Work
  - a. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) metabolizing calculations
  - b. Manually controlled closed circuit rebreathers
  - c. Equivalent narcosis depth theory
  - d. Central nervous system (CNS) tracking
  - e. Oxygen tracking units (out)
  - f. Gas management

3. Dive Tables
  - a. Creation of custom dive tables appropriate to dive depths
  - b. Creation of lower percentage oxygen (PO<sub>2</sub>) diluent to support loop flushing and bailout at depth
4. Dive Computers
  - a. Mix adjustable
  - b. Constant partial pressure of oxygen (PPO<sub>2</sub>)
  - c. Decompression conservatism/Gradient factor selection
  - d. Oxygen (O<sub>2</sub>) integrated
5. Dive Planning
  - a. Operational planning.
  - b. Scrubber duration
  - c. Gas requirements including bailout scenarios , gas management and gas consumption
6. Decompression on a CCR
  - a. Oxygen limitations
  - b. Nitrogen limitations
  - c. Helium limitations
7. Equipment Maintenance
  - a. Fuel cell management
    - i. Date stamps
    - ii. Replacement
  - b. Loop configurations
  - c. Additional fitted equipment and modifications
    - i. Auto diluent addition
    - ii. Dual mode mouthpieces /bail out valves
    - iii. Heads up display
    - iv. Additional manual injectors
    - v. Integrating oxygen monitors for dive computers

## **34.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**The following open water skills must be completed by the student during open water dives with the following course limits:**

1. No dives deeper than 100 metres / 330 feet
2. No dives shallower than 40 metres / 130 feet other than the 1 air diluent configuration dive
3. Equivalent narcosis depth not to exceed 30 metres / 100 feet



4. Calculate bailout gas at 45 litres /1.6 cubic feet per minute usage for bottom mix and at 30 liters/1.1 cubic feet per minute for decompression gas(es)
5. PO<sub>2</sub> not to exceed manufacturer recommendation or a working limit of 1.3 bar during the bottom phase of the dive and 1.4 bar during the decompression phase of the dive
6. Diluent PO<sub>2</sub> should not exceed 1.2 at maximum depth
7. All dives to be completed within appropriate fixed PO<sub>2</sub> decompression tables or decompression planning software
8. All dives to be completed within CNS percentage limits with a recommend maximum of 80 percent of the total PO<sub>2</sub> CNS limit
9. The student is only certified for CCR mixed gas diving on the rebreather being used

**Pre-dive Drills**

1. Conduct pre-dive checks using TDI Pre-flight checklist
2. Use START\* before every dive
3. Stress analysis and mitigation

**Land Drills**

1. Build unit based on manufacturer's specifications using manufacturer's manual/build checklist
2. Demonstrate familiarity with basic and intermediate hand signals
3. Select and prepare equipment suitable for soft overhead environment with long decompression obligations
4. Conduct team-oriented drills for lift bag deployment and gas switching procedure
5. Drills for buddy rescue
6. Properly analyze all gas mixtures to be used
7. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
  - a. Limits based on system performance and scrubber duration
  - b. Limits based on bailout gas requirements
  - c. Limits based on oxygen exposures at chosen PPO<sub>2</sub> levels
  - d. Limits based on manually controlled closed circuit rebreathers
  - e. Limits based on nitrogen absorption at planned depth and PPO<sub>2</sub> (setpoint) level
  - f. Limits based on helium absorption
  - g. Appropriate selection of decompression conservatism/gradient factors for the planned dive
  - h. Correct narcotic depth planning and diluent selection to allow cell flushing at target depth (diluent should not exceed a PO<sub>2</sub> of 1.2 at maximum planned depth)

**Open Water Skills:**

1. All skills must be demonstrated by the instructor on the unit-specific CCR
2. Show good awareness of buddy and other team members through communications, proximity and team-oriented dive practices
3. Demonstrate buoyancy control; ability to hover at fixed position in water column without moving hands or feet
4. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and conclude the dive and decompression on open circuit gases carried
5. Properly execute a recovery from a system failure and conclude the dive and decompression with the unit in manual mode
6. Gas shutdowns and loss of gas, correct choice and switching to off board gases
7. Broken hoses, disaster scenarios
8. Flooded absorbent canister
9. Cell errors
10. SCR drill (minimum of 10 minutes)
11. Oxygen rebreather mode in depths less than 6 metres / 20 feet
12. Manually control CCR Unit for one full dive including all decompression stops
13. Demonstrate competence managing 3 bailout cylinders, including drop and recovery while maintaining position in the water column
14. Demonstrate proper understanding and implementation of team bailout procedures and conduct a team bailout from a depth greater than 40 metres/130ft
15. Demonstrate ability as a team to plug in and share off-board gas, including team sharing/swapping of off-board bailouts
16. On 2 of the dives, demonstrate an ascent with ascent reel and lift bag and perform staged decompression
17. Cell validation checks with appropriate use of diluent and oxygen
18. Proper execution of the dive within all pre-determined dive limits
19. Ability to manage multiple failures in adverse conditions
20. Demonstrate use of surface support/support divers in dealing with bailout scenarios
21. Demonstrate controlled ascent with simulated toxed diver including surface tow at least 50 metres / 165 feet with equipment removal on surface, in water too deep to stand in

**In order to complete the course and achieve the unit specific TDI  
Advanced Mixed Gas CCR rating the student must:**

1. Complete to the instructor's satisfaction all confined and open water skill development sessions
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Advanced Trimix written examination with a minimum score of 80 percent
4. Course must be completed within 6 weeks from the starting date
5. Complete a refresher course following a period of inactivity greater than 6 months following the course
- 6.

## 35. Rebreather Cavern Diver

### 35.1 Introduction

This course is designed to develop the minimum skills and knowledge for diving a TDI approved rebreather in cavern and overhead environments within the limits of light penetration; in addition, outline specific hazards associated with rebreather cave diving. The Rebreather Cavern course is not intended to provide instruction for diving in cave environments. The objective of this course is to train divers in the proper planning, procedures, techniques and hazards of rebreather cavern diving.

### 35.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in rebreather cavern diving activities without direct supervision provided the graduates adhere to the following limits:

1. Daylight zone, i.e. within natural light of the cavern entrance
2. Diver carries adequate bailout to safely exit from the furthest point of penetration using a minimum SAC rate of 30 litres per minute/1 cubic foot per minute OR the student's calculated elevated SAC rate to account for a CO<sub>2</sub> event, whichever is greater
3. 60 linear metres / 200 linear feet from the surface
4. 30 metres / 100 feet maximum depth
5. No decompression diving
6. No restrictions; no areas too small for 2 divers to pass side-by-side
7. Safety stops as appropriate or necessary
8. Maintain a continuous guideline
9. Proper cavern diving equipment is used in conjunction with a TDI approved rebreather
10. No removal of life support equipment shall be permitted within the overhead environment
11. Visibility must be adequate to identify the exit from inside the cavern

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Rebreather Intro to Cave course

### **35.3 Who May Teach**

Any active TDI Rebreather Full Cave Diver Instructor. The instructor must be qualified as an instructor on the TDI approved rebreather they are diving, and as an Air Diluent Diver (or equivalent) on the TDI approved rebreather the student is diving.

### **35.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

#### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

#### **Open Water**

1. A maximum of 4 students per active TDI instructor

#### **Cavern**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed; ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

### **35.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
2. Provide proof of TDI Air Diluent CCR diver or equivalent
3. Provide proof of a minimum of 25 logged dives and 25 hours on the specific unit

### **35.6 Course Structure and Duration**

#### **Water Execution**

1. Minimum of 5 dives must be conducted including
  - a. 1 open water session
  - b. Four cavern dives with a minimum total bottom time of 120 minutes conducted at 2 different sites
2. Visibility must be adequate to identify the exit from inside the cavern

#### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

**Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 6
2. Course must be conducted over a minimum of 2 days

**35.7 Administrative Requirements****The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment and certifications
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

**35.8 Required Equipment****The following are required for this course**

1. *TDI Cavern Diver Manual* or eLearning
2. *TDI Cavern Diver Instructor Guide*
3. *TDI Cavern Diver Instructor Resource* (Optional)
4. *TDI Diving Rebreathers Student Manual* or eLearning
5. *TDI Diving Rebreathers PowerPoint Presentation* (optional)
6. Rebreather Manufacturer's manual and updates
7. Manufacturer's Build Checklist
8. *TDI CCR Preflight Checklist*

**Suggested reading materials**

1. *NACD Art of Safe Cave Diving*
2. *Basic Cave Diving – A Blueprint for Survival*
3. *CDAA - Cavern / Sinkhole Manual*
4. *NSS-CDS Cavern Manual*

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. A complete TDI approved rebreather
2. Minimum of 1 rebreather enabled computer or PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring device
3. Bailout cylinder(s) with volume appropriate for the dive
4. Bailout regulator(s) equipped with pressure gauge and low pressure off board (quick connect) gas supply hose.
5. Access to an oxygen analyzer (instructor may supply)
6. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD)
7. Exposure suit adequate for cavern environment
8. Mask and fins
9. Line cutting device
10. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
11. One primary reel with length appropriate for intended dive
12. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a burn time suitable for the planned dive time
13. Slate or wet notes and pencil
14. Submersible dive tables or backup dive computer
15. Three directional line arrows
16. Weight system

**Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises**

## **35.9 Required Subject Areas**

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Policy for Cavern Diving
2. Psychological Considerations
3. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Bailout cylinder options
    - i. Single bailout cylinder vs redundant
    - ii. Long hose vs short hose on bailout
  - b. Rebreather configuration options
  - c. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD)/ harness options
  - d. Scrubber options
  - e. Reel options
  - f. Proper weighting
  - g. Equipment configurations

4. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signals
5. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques
6. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
7. Cavern Environment
  - a. Geology
    - i. Bottom
    - ii. Ceiling
  - b. Local access requirements
  - c. Land owner relations
8. Cavern Conservation
9. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions
10. Bailout Gas Volume Requirements
11. Accident Analysis
12. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
13. Cavern Diving with Open Circuit Divers
  - a. Bailout configuration requirements
  - b. Out of air emergencies
14. Cavern Diving Etiquette



## 35.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements

At NO point is the student to be unable to monitor their PO<sub>2</sub> while on the loop. Zero visibility drills must be performed in a way that the student may monitor the status of the breathing loop, i.e. no mask but able to monitor HUD, lights out but able to use display lighting to view PO<sub>2</sub>, etc. Or, the drill must be done on bailout.

**The following land drills must be covered during this course:**

1. How to properly:
  - a. Deploy a guideline
  - b. Follow a guideline
  - c. Conduct bail out exit including gas sharing while following a guideline
  - d. Conduct bail out exit including gas sharing simulating zero visibility and using touch contact while following a guideline
2. Touch contact communicate
3. Correctly deploy directional markers

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate:
  - a. Adequate pre-dive planning
  - b. Equipment check and equipment matching
  - c. Bubble check
  - d. Specialized propulsion techniques
  - e. Proper buoyancy control
  - f. Proper body posture
  - g. Proper PO<sub>2</sub> management
  - h. Overall rebreather instruments analysis
  - i. Proper stress analysis (detection and management)

**The student must complete the following skills in a non-overhead environment prior to entering the cavern:**

1. Properly:
  - a. Deploy a guideline
  - b. Follow a guideline
  - c. Conduct bail out exit including gas sharing while following a guideline
  - d. Conduct bail out exit including gas sharing simulating zero visibility and using touch contact while following a guideline
2. Touch contact communicate
3. Correctly deploy directional markers

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during cavern dives:**

1. Properly:
  - a. Deploy a guideline
  - b. Use directional line markers
  - c. Follow a guideline
  - d. Follow a guideline simulating loss of visibility
2. Perform bailout exit practicing gas sharing with teammates:
  - a. Following the guideline
  - b. Simulating zero visibility and using touch contact, following the guideline
3. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
4. Demonstrate light / hand signals and touch contact
5. Explore cavern
6. Execute proper conservation and awareness techniques
7. Use referencing as back-up navigation
8. Demonstrate adequate anti-silting techniques
9. Simulate a primary light failure, and deploy back up light and follow guideline to exit cavern
10. Demonstrate rebreather unit specific skills in compliance with current level of rebreather certification as outlined in the TDI course curriculum

**Note:** No removal of life support equipment shall be permitted within the overhead Environment

**In order to complete this course, students must**

1. Perform all land drills and rebreather cavern dive requirements safely and efficiently
2. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
3. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cavern environment
4. Log all dives

## 36. Rebreather Intro to Cave

### 36.1 Introduction

This course is an introduction to the basic principles of rebreather cave diving utilizing a single primary guide line. The TDI Rebreather Intro to Cave is the second level in the development of safe techniques for rebreather cave diving, directly building upon the TDI Rebreather Cavern Diver course. This introduction to cave diving is not intended to train divers for all facets of rebreather cave diving. The objective of this course is the perfection of skills taught in the TDI Rebreather Cavern Diver program, in addition to the adoption of additional techniques and procedures required for elementary rebreather cave dives.

### 36.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in single guideline rebreather cave diving activities without direct supervision provided the graduates adhere to the following limits:

1. Diver carries adequate bailout to safely exit from the furthest point of penetration using a minimum SAC rate of 30 litres per minute/1 cubic foot per minute OR the student's calculated elevated SAC rate to account for a CO<sub>2</sub> event, whichever is greater
2. 40 metres / 130 feet maximum depth
3. No decompression diving
4. Maintain a continuous guideline (no jumps, no gaps)
5. Proper cave diving equipment is used in conjunction with a TDI approved rebreather

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates are qualified to enroll in:

1. TDI Rebreather Full Cave course

### 36.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Rebreather Full Cave Diver Instructor. The instructor must be qualified as an instructor on the TDI approved rebreather they are diving, and as an Air Diluent Diver (or equivalent) on the TDI approved rebreather the student is diving.

## 36.4 Student to Instructor Ratio

### Academic

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

### Open Water

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

### Cave Dives

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

## 36.5 Student Prerequisites

1. Minimum age 18
2. Minimum certification requirement; TDI CCR Air Diluent Diver or equivalent
3. Provide proof of certification as a:
  - a. TDI Rebreather Cavern Diver or equivalent

**OR**

  - b. TDI Introductory Cave Diver or equivalent
4. Provide proof of a minimum of 50 logged dives and 30 hours on the rebreather unit used

## 36.6 Course Structure and Duration

### Water Execution

1. One open water evaluation dive *must* be conducted if students are new to the instructor or a period of 6 months has passed since their last cavern dive.
2. Minimum of 4 single guideline cave dives with a total bottom time of 160 minutes conducted at 2 different sites
3. Only 2 dives from the TDI Introductory Rebreather Cave Diver course may be credited towards the total dives required for TDI CCR Air Diluent Decompression Procedures course

**Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill level

**Duration**

1. The minimum number of classroom and briefing hours is 4
2. Course must be taught over a minimum of 2 days

**36.7 Administrative Requirements****The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

**36.8 Required Equipment****The following are required for this course:**

1. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Manual or eLearning
2. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Instructor Guide
3. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Instructor Resource CD (Optional)
4. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual or eLearning
5. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* PowerPoint Presentation (optional)
6. CCR Manufacturer's manual and updates
7. Manufacturer's Build Checklist
8. *TDI CCR Preflight Checklist*

**Other suggested reading materials:**

1. *NACD Art of Safe Cave Diving*
2. *Basic Cave Diving – A Blueprint for Survival*
3. *CDA – Cavern / Sinkhole* Manual
4. *NSS-CDS Cave Diving* Manual
5. *The Darkness Beckons* – Martyn Farr
6. *Cavern Measureless to Man*

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. A complete TDI approved Rebreather
2. Minimum of 1 rebreather enabled computer or PO<sub>2</sub> monitoring device
3. Off board bailout cylinder(s) – volume appropriate for planned dive
4. Bailout regulator(s) equipped with pressure gauge and low pressure off board (quick connect) gas supply hose
5. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
6. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
7. Access to an oxygen analyzer (instructor may supply)
8. Mask and fins
9. Minimum of 2 cutting devices
10. Slate and pencil
11. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
12. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
13. One primary cave-diving reel with length appropriate for intended dive
14. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
15. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
16. Submersible dive tables or backup dive computer
17. Three directional line arrows

**Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises**

## **36.9 Required Subject Areas**

**The following topics must be covered during this course:**

1. Policy for Cave Diving
2. Psychological Considerations
3. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Bailout cylinder options
    - i. Single bailout cylinder vs redundant
    - ii. Long hose vs short hose on bailout
  - b. Rebreather configuration options
  - c. Scrubber options
  - d. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) / harness options
  - e. Reel options
  - f. Proper weighting
  - g. Equipment configurations

4. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signals
5. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control and rebreather weighting
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques
6. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
7. Cave Environment
  - a. Geology
    - i. Bottom
    - ii. Ceiling
  - b. Local access requirements
  - c. Land owner relations
8. Conservation
9. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions
10. Accident Analysis
11. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
12. Cave Diving with Open Circuit Divers
  - a. bailout equipment requirements
  - b. out of air emergencies
13. Cave Diving Etiquette

## 36.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements

At NO point is the student to be unable to monitor their PO<sub>2</sub> while on the loop. Zero visibility drills must be performed in a way that the student may monitor the status of the breathing loop; i.e. no mask but able to monitor HUD, lights out but able to use display lighting to view PO<sub>2</sub>, etc. Or the drill must be done on bailout.

**The following land drills must be covered during this course:**

1. How to properly:
  - a. Deploy a guideline
  - b. Follow a guideline
  - c. Conduct bail out exit including gas sharing while following a guideline
  - d. Conduct bail out exit including gas sharing simulating zero visibility and using touch contact while following a guideline
2. Use of safety reel in:
  - a. Lost diver procedures
  - b. Lost line drill

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate:
  - a. Adequate pre-dive planning
  - b. Equipment check and equipment matching
  - c. Bubble check
  - d. Specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
  - e. Proper:
    - i. Buoyancy control
    - ii. Body posture
    - iii. Stress analysis (detection and management)
    - iv. Oxygen partial pressure management
    - v. Overall rebreather instruments analysis

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during cave dives:**

1. Properly:
  - a. Deploy a guideline
  - b. Use line markers
  - c. Follow a guideline
  - d. Follow a guideline simulating loss of visibility



2. Perform bailout exit practicing gas sharing with teammates, following the guideline
3. Perform bailout exit practicing gas sharing with teammates simulating zero visibility and using touch contact, following the guideline
4. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
5. Demonstrate light / hand signals and touch contact
6. Conservation and awareness techniques
7. Using referencing as back-up navigation
8. Demonstrate adequate anti-silting techniques
9. Simulate a primary light failure, and use back-up light to exit the cave
10. Demonstrate lost line drills using instrumentation lighting only
11. Demonstrate lost diver drills
12. Demonstrate rebreather unit specific skills in compliance with current level of rebreather certification as outlined in the TDI course curriculum

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Introductory Cave Diver Course written examination
2. Perform all land drills and cave dive requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cavern environment
5. Log all dives

## 37. Rebreather Full Cave Diver

### 37.1 Introduction

This course is the third stage of training in the series of TDI's Rebreather Cave Diver development program. Advanced rebreather cave dive planning, the practical execution of different types of cave systems and scenarios divers encounter are presented. This rebreather cave diving course is not intended to prepare divers for evaluating all facets of cave diving. The objective of this course is to expand and critique previous skills accomplished in the TDI Rebreather Cavern Diver and Rebreather Intro to Cave programs. Emphasis is placed upon dive planning and skill perfection through actual cave penetration.

### 37.2 Qualifications of Graduates

Upon successful completion of this course, graduates may engage in cave diving activities without direct supervision provided the graduates adhere to the following limits:

1. Diver carries adequate bailout to safely exit from the furthest point of penetration and complete any decompression stops using a minimum SAC rate of 30 litres per minute/1 cubic foot per minute OR the student's calculated elevated SAC rate to account for a CO<sub>2</sub> event, whichever is greater
2. 45 metres / 150 feet maximum depth
3. No equipment removal in cave
4. Complete safety and decompression stops as appropriate or necessary
5. Maintain a continuous guideline
6. Proper cave diving equipment is used in conjunction with a TDI approved rebreather

### 37.3 Who May Teach

Any active TDI Rebreather Full Cave Diver Instructor. The instructor must be qualified as an instructor on the TDI approved rebreather they are diving, and as an Air Diluent Decompression Diver (or equivalent) on the TDI approved rebreather the student is diving.

## **37.4 Student to Instructor Ratio**

### **Academic**

1. Unlimited, so long as adequate facility, supplies and time are provided to ensure comprehensive and complete training of subject matter

### **Open Water**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

### **Cave Dives**

1. A maximum of 3 students per active TDI Instructor are allowed
2. The ratio should be reduced as required due to environmental or operational constraints

## **37.5 Student Prerequisites**

1. Minimum age 18
  2. Certified TDI CCR Air Diluent Decompression Procedures Diver certification or equivalent
  3. Provide proof of certification as a:
    - a. TDI Rebreather Intro to Cave or equivalent
- OR**
- b. TDI Full Cave Diver or equivalent
4. Provide proof of a minimum of 50 logged dives and 50 hours on the rebreather unit used

## **37.6 Course Structure and Duration**

### **Water Execution**

1. Six cave dives are required with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 420 minutes at 3 different sites
2. At least 1 of these sites should be a location not utilized in training during the cavern or introductory cave courses
3. At least 2 dives must be at least 75 minutes long

### **Course Structure**

1. TDI allows instructors to structure courses according to the number of students participating and their skill Level

**Duration**

1. The suggested number of classroom and briefing hours is 6
2. Course must be taught in no less than 4 days
3. The combined Rebreather Cavern, Intro and Full Cave course must be taught in no less than 7 days

**Upgrade**

1. Divers who are certified both as TDI Full Cave Diver or equivalent AND TDI Air Diluent CCR Decompression Procedures Diver or equivalent may be upgraded to TDI Rebreather Full Cave Diver by completion of all course requirements except:
  - a. Four cave dives are required with a minimum accumulated bottom time of 240 minutes at two different sites. At least two of the dives must be at least 75 minutes long.
  - b. All other course requirements must be met

**37.7 Administrative Requirements****The following are the administrative tasks:**

1. Collect the course fees from all the students
2. Ensure that the students have the required equipment and certifications
3. Communicate the training schedule to the students
4. Have the students complete the:
  - a. *TDI Liability Release and Express Assumption of Risk Form*
  - b. *TDI Medical Statement Form*

**Upon successful completion of the course the instructor must:**

1. Issue the appropriate TDI certification by submitting the *TDI Diver Registration Form* or registering the students online through member's area of the TDI website

**37.8 Required Equipment****The following are required for this course:**

1. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Manual or eLearning
2. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Instructor Guide
3. *TDI Diving in Overhead Environments* Digital Instructor Resource (Optional)
4. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* Student Manual or eLearning
5. *TDI Diving Rebreathers* PowerPoint Presentation (optional)
6. CCR Manufacturer's manual and updates
7. Manufacturer's Build Checklist
8. *TDI CCR Preflight Checklist*

**Other suggested reading materials:**

1. *CCR Cave Almost Simplified*- Mel Clark
2. *NACD Art of Safe Cave Diving*
3. *Basic Cave Diving – A Blueprint for Survival*
4. *CDAA - Cavern / Sinkhole Manual*
5. *NSS – CDS Cave Diving Manual*
6. *Cavern Measureless to Man*
7. *The Darkness Beckons* – Martyn Farr

**The following equipment is required for each student:**

1. A complete TDI approved rebreather
2. At least one rebreather enabled computer capable of monitoring PO<sub>2</sub>, and a redundant means of monitoring PO<sub>2</sub>. Redundant devices may either be an enabled computer or HUD. Any modifications to the unit must be approved by the manufacturer
3. Off board bailout cylinder(s) – volume appropriate for planned dive
4. Bailout regulator(s) equipped with pressure gauge and low pressure off board (quick connect) gas supply hose.
5. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) with power inflator
6. Exposure suit adequate for diving environment
7. Access to an oxygen analyzer (instructor may supply)
8. Mask and fins
9. Minimum of 2 cutting devices
10. Slate and pencil
11. Three battery powered lights; 1 primary and 2 back-ups, each with a with burn time suitable for the planned dive time
12. Safety reel with a minimum of 37 metres / 125 feet of guideline
13. Gap reel with 15 metres / 50 feet of guideline
14. One primary cave-diving reel with length appropriate for intended dive
15. Computer, watch or bottom timer and depth gauge
16. Slate or wet notes with a pencil
17. Submersible dive tables or backup dive computer
18. Three directional line arrows
19. Three non-directional marker
20. Any staged decompression cylinders must be properly labeled

**Instructor must use full cave diving equipment during all water exercises**

## 37.9 Required Subject Areas

The following topics must be covered during this course:

1. Policy for Cave Diving
2. Psychological Considerations
3. Equipment Considerations
  - a. Bailout cylinder options
    - i. Single bailout cylinder vs redundant
    - ii. Long hose vs short hose on bailout
  - b. Rebreather configuration options
  - c. Scrubber options
  - d. Buoyancy compensator device (BCD) / harness options
  - e. Reel options
  - f. Proper weighting
  - g. Equipment configurations
4. Communication
  - a. Hand signals
  - b. Light signals
  - c. Touch contact signals
5. Swimming Techniques
  - a. Body posture/ trim
  - b. Buoyancy control and rebreather weighting
  - c. Line following
  - d. Propulsion techniques
6. Physiology
  - a. Breathing techniques
  - b. Stress management
  - c. Decompression theory and its application to cave diving
7. Cave Environment
  - a. Geology
  - b. Bottom
  - c. Ceiling
  - d. Local access requirements
  - e. Land owner relations
8. Conservation
9. Problem Solving
  - a. Emergency procedures
  - b. Equipment failure
  - c. Silting conditions

10. Accident Analysis
11. Review of Dive Tables and Decompression Theory
12. Cave diving with Open Circuit divers
  - a. Bailout configuration requirements
  - b. Out of air emergencies
13. Cave Diving Etiquette

### **37.10 Required Skill Performance and Graduation Requirements**

**At NO point is the student to be unable to monitor their PO<sub>2</sub> while on the loop. Zero visibility drills must be performed in a way that the student may monitor the status of the breathing loop; i.e. no mask but able to monitor HUD, lights out but able to use display back light to view PO<sub>2</sub>, etc. Or, the drill must be done on bailout.**

**The following land drills must be covered during this course:**

1. How to properly:
  - a. Deploy a guideline
  - b. Follow a guideline
  - c. Conduct bail out exit including gas sharing while following a guideline
  - d. Conduct bail out exit including gas sharing simulating zero visibility and using touch contact while following a guideline
2. Use of safety reel in:
  - a. Lost diver procedures
  - b. Lost line drill

**The student must perform the following S-drill and skills during all dives:**

1. Demonstrate adequate pre-dive planning
2. Equipment check and equipment matching
3. Bubble check
4. Demonstrate:
  - a. Specialized propulsion techniques in varying types of flow
  - b. Proper:
    - i. Buoyancy control
    - ii. Body posture
    - iii. Stress analysis (detection and management)
    - iv. Oxygen partial pressure management
    - v. Overall rebreather instruments analysis

**The student must perform the following in-water skills during cave dives:**

1. Properly:
  - a. Deploy a guideline
  - b. Use directional and non directional line markers
  - c. Follow a guideline
  - d. Follow a guideline simulating loss of visibility
2. Perform bailout exit practicing gas sharing with teammates:
  - a. Following the guideline
  - b. Simulating zero visibility and using touch contact, following the guideline
3. Remove and replace mask while in contact with guideline
4. Demonstrate light / hand signals and touch contact
5. Execute conservation and awareness techniques
6. Use referencing as back-up navigation
7. Demonstrate adequate anti-silting techniques
8. Simulate a primary light failure, and use back light to exit the cave
9. Demonstrate lost line drills using instrumentation lighting only
10. Demonstrate lost diver drills
11. Demonstrate to use of reels to perform jumps and gaps required in circuits and traverses to maintain a continuous guideline to open water
12. Exit the cave flying the rebreather in SCR mode
13. Exit the cave simulating solenoid failure (if applicable)
14. Demonstrate advanced navigation techniques including a minimum of:
  - a. 4 jumps
  - b. 2 circuits
15. Demonstrate rebreather unit specific skills in compliance with current level of rebreather certification as outlined in the TDI course curriculum

**In order to complete this course, students must:**

1. Satisfactorily complete the TDI Cave Diver Course written examination
2. Perform all land drills and cave dive requirements safely and efficiently
3. Demonstrate mature, sound judgment concerning dive planning and execution
4. Maintain an appropriate level of awareness and respect for the cavern environment
5. Log all dives